
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

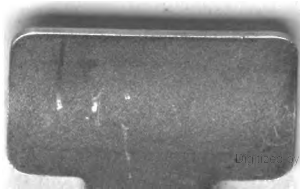
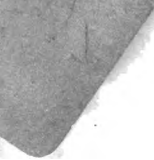
<https://books.google.com>



NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 00859570 8



Price

75

PAT TEN'S

INFANTRY TACTICS

Bayonet Drill

AND

SMALL SWORD EXERCISES

COMPILED

Agreeably to the Latest Regulations of the

FROM

STANDARD MILITARY AUTHORITY

BY GEORGE PATTERSON

LIEUT-COLONEL UNITED STATES ARMY

Revised Edition.

NEW

YORK:

PUBLISHED BY

J. W. FORT

No. 102 CENTRE STREET

1865.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the
office of the District Court of the United States

for the Southern District of New York, by JAMES W. FORT

PATTEN'S
INFANTRY TACTICS,
BAYONET DRILL,
AND
Small Sword Exercise.

COMPILED

AGREEABLY TO THE LATEST REGULATIONS OF THE
WAR DEPARTMENT,

FROM

Standard Military Authority.

BY LIEUT.-COL. GEO. PATTEN,
LATE UNITED STATES ARMY.

31

NEW YORK:
PUBLISHED BY J. W. FORTUNE,
102 CENTRE STREET.
1865.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1861,
BY JAMES WALDEN FORTUNE,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864,
BY JAMES WALDEN FORTUNE,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

P R E F A C E

T O T H E F I F T H E D I T I O N .

THE great and increasing demand for this work has rendered its revision necessary, in order that it may impart full instruction in all the Company and Battalion movements authorized by the War Department. It is now presented as a complete Manual for Field and Company Officers, in the Schools of the Soldier, Company, and Battalion.

Besides which, full instruction is given in the deployments and other movements of skirmishers, together with the *Bayonet Drill*, sufficiently described and illustrated, to furnish such instruction as will render the soldier master of his piece and perfectly self-reliant, when brought singly in conflict with an antagonist similarly armed, or with a mounted enemy.

In addition to the foregoing there has been added such

instruction in the *Small Sword Exercise*, as will render one familiar with this weapon without the assistance of a master.

An important feature of this book consists in each movement being completely described without reference to paragraphs in other volumes, which is of great advantage to the learner.

January 1st, 1864

CONTENTS.

	Page
NOMENCLATURE OF THE MUSKET.....	12
SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.....	13
General Rules and Division of the School of the Soldier..	13
Commands.....	14
PART FIRST—	
<i>Lesson 1.</i> —Position of the Soldier.....	15
Remarks on the Position of the Soldier.....	15
<i>Lesson 2.</i> —Facings.....	18
<i>Lesson 3.</i> —Principles of the Direct Step.....	19
<i>Lesson 4.</i> —Principle of the Double Quick Step.....	21
PART SECOND—	
<i>Lesson 1.</i> —Principles of Shouldered Arms.....	24
<i>Lesson 2.</i> —Manual of Arms, Support Arms.....	25
Shoulder Arms, Present Arms.....	26
Order Arms.....	27
Load in Nine Times.....	28
Recover Arms, Fix Bayonets.....	34
Charge Bayonets.....	35
Trail Arms, Unfix Bayonet.....	36
Secure Arms.....	37
Right Shoulder, Shift Arms.....	38
Support Arms.....	39
Arms at Will, Ground Arms.....	40
Raise Arms, Inspection of Arms.....	41
Fix Bayonet.....	42
<i>Lesson 3.</i> —To Load in Four Times.....	42
To Load at Will.....	43
To Mark Time, to Change Step, to March Backwards.....	44
Firings, the Direct Fire, Cease Firing.....	45
Oblique Firing.....	46
Position of the Two Ranks in the Oblique Fire to the right	46
To Fire by file.....	46
To Fire by rank.....	47
To Fire and Load kneeling.....	48
To Fire and Load lying.....	49
PART THIRD—	
<i>Lesson 1.</i> —Alignments, Front.....	50
<i>Lesson 2.</i> —To March to the Front.....	52
To March to the Front in Double Quick Time.....	53
To Face About in Marching.....	54

	Page
<i>Lesson 3.—To March by the Flank</i>	54
To March by the Flank in Double Quick Time.....	56
<i>Lesson 4.—Wheelings, General Principles of Wheeling</i>	57
Wheeling from a Halt, or on a Fixed Pivot.....	57
Remarks on the Principles of the Wheel from a Halt.....	58
Wheeling in Marching, or on a Movable Pivot.....	59
Turning, or Change of Direction to the side of the Guide.....	60
Wheeling and Changing Direction to the side of the Guide in Double Quick Time.....	60
<i>Lesson 5.—Long Marches in Double Quick Time and the Run</i>	61
To Stack Arms.....	61
SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY	65
Posts of Company Officers, Sergeants, and Corporals.....	65
General Rules and Division of the School of the Company.....	66
<i>Lesson 1, Art. 1.—To Open Ranks</i>	67
To Close Ranks.....	68
Art. 2.—Alignments in Closed Ranks.....	69
<i>Lesson 2, Art. 1</i>	69
Art. 2.—To Fire by Company.....	70
Art. 3.—The Fire by File.....	70
Art. 4.—The Fire by Rank.....	71
Art. 5.—To Fire by the Rear Rank.....	71
<i>Lesson 3, Art. 1.—To Advance in Line of Battle</i>	72
Art. 2.—To Halt the Company Marching in Line of Battle and to Align it, Oblique Marching in Line of Battle....	73
Art. 3.—To March in Retreat.....	74
<i>Lesson 4, Art. 1.—To March by the Flank</i>	75
Art. 2.—To Change Direction by File.....	77
To Halt the Company, Marching by the Flank, and to Face it to the Front.....	77
Art. 3.—The Company being in March by the Flank, to Form it on the Right (or Left) by File into Line of Battle.....	78
Art. 4.—The Company being in March by the Flank, to Form it by Company or by Platoon into Line.....	79
<i>Lesson 5, Art. 1.—To Break into Column by Platoon, either at a Halt or in March</i>	82
Art. 2.—To March in Column.....	84
Art. 3.—To Change Direction.....	86
Art. 4.—To Halt the Column.....	88
Art. 5.—Being in Column by Platoon, to Form to the Right or Left into Line of Battle.....	88
<i>Lesson 6, Art. 1.—To Break the Company into Platoons, and to Re-form the Company</i>	90
To Re-form the Company.....	92
Art. 2.—Being in Column, to Break Files to the Rear, and to Cause them to re-enter into Line.....	93

	PAGES
Art. 8.—To March the Column in Route, and to execute the Movements incident thereto.....	95
Art. 5.—Formation of a Company from Two Ranks into Four, and reciprocally, at a Halt in March.....	104
Countermarch.....	107
SKIRMISHERS, OR LIGHT INFANTRY AND RIFLE COMPANY MOVEMENTS.....	109
General Principles and Divisions of the Instructions.....	109
Art. 1.—Deployments.....	111
To Deploy Forward.....	112
To Deploy by the Flank.....	115
To Extend Intervals.....	117
To Close Intervals.....	118
To Relieve a Company Deployed as Skirmishers.....	119
Art. 2.—To Advance in Line and to Retreat in Line.....	119
To Change Direction.....	121
To March by the Flank.....	122
Art. 3.—The Firings.....	123
To Fire at a Halt, to Fire Marching.....	123
Art. 4.—The Rally, to Form Column.....	125
Rally by Sections.....	126
Rally by Platoon, Rally on the Reserve.....	127
Rally on the Battalion, the Assembly, Assemble on the Reserve.....	130
Assemble on the Centre.....	131
Art. 5.—Deployment of a Battalion as Skirmishers, and Rallying the same.....	131
To Deploy the Battalion.....	131
The Rally.....	135
THE SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.....	139
Formation of a Regiment in Order of Battle, or in Line..	139
Posts of Field Officers and Regimental Staff.....	140
Posts of Field Music and Band.....	141
Color-Guard, General Guides.....	141
Order of Instruction in the School of the Battalion.....	142
Formation of the Battalion.....	143
General Rules and Division of the School of the Battalion	143
PART FIRST—	
Opening and Closing Ranks, and the Execution of the different Fires.....	144
Art. 1.—To Open and to Close Ranks.....	144
Art. 2.—Manual of Arms.....	145
Art. 3.—Loading at Will and the Firings.....	146
The Fire by Company.....	147
The Fire by Wing, The Fire by Battalion.....	148
The Fire by File, The Fire by Rank.....	148
To Fire by the Rear Rank.....	149

PART SECOND—

	Page
Different Modes of Passing from the Order in Battle to the Order in Column	151
Art. 1.—To Break to the Right or Left into Column.....	151
Art. 2.—To Break to the Rear by the Right or Left into Column, and to Advance or Retire by the Right or Left of Companies.....	154
Art. 8.—To Ploy the Battalion into Close Column.....	158

PART THIRD—

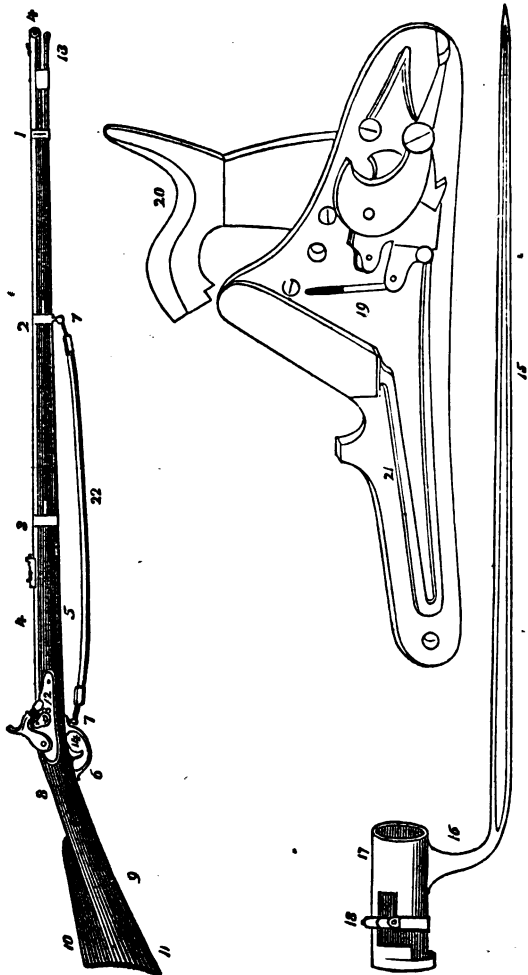
Art. 1.—To March in Column at Full Distance.....	164
The Column arriving in Front of the Line of Battle, to Prolong it on this Line.....	166
The Column arriving behind the Line of Battle, to Prolong it on this Line.....	167
The Column arriving on the Right or Left of the Line of Battle, to Prolong it on this Line.....	168
Art. 2.—Column in Route.....	168
Art. 3.—To change Direction in Column at full Distance.	170
Art. 4.—To Halt the Column.....	171
Art. 5.—To close the Column to Half Distance, or in Mass To close the Column on the Eighth or Rearmost Company	173
Art. 6.—To March in Column at Half Distance, or Closed in Mass.....	174
Art. 7.—To Change Direction in Column at Half Distance	176
Art. 8.—To Change Direction in Column Closed in Mass.	177
Art. 9.—Being in Column at Half Distances, or Closed in Mass, to Take Distances.....	182
Art. 10.—Countermarch of a Column at full or half Distance	187
Art. 11.—Being in Column by Company, closed in Mass, to form Divisions.....	189
Being in Column at Full or Half Distance, to form Divisions	191
Remarks on the Formation of Divisions from a Halt....	192

PART FOURTH—

Different Modes of Passing from the Order in Column to the Order in Battle	192
Art. 1.—Manner of Determining the Line of Battle....	193
Art. 2.—Different Modes of Passing from Column at Full Distance into Line of Battle.....	193
By Inversion to the Right (or Left) into Line of Battle...	196
Successive Formations.....	197
Remarks on the Formation on the Right, or Left, into Line of Battle.....	201
Column at Full Distance, Forward into Line of Battle...	201
Remarks on the Formation Forward into Line of Battle.	205
Column at Full Distance, Faced to the Rear, into Line of Battle	208
Art. 8.—Formation into Line of Battle by Two Movements	209

	PAGE
Art. 4.—Different Modes of Passing from Column at Half Distance into Line of Battle	212
Column at Half Distance, to the Left (or Right) into Line of Battle	212
Column at Half Distance, to the Right (or Left) into Line of Battle	213
Column at Half Distance, Forward into Line of Battle	213
Column at Half Distance, Faced to the Rear, into Line of Battle	214
Art. 5.—Deployment of Columns Closed in Mass	214
Remarks on the Deployment of Columns Closed in Mass	223
Remarks on Inversions	225
PART FIFTH—	
Art. 1.—To Advance in Line of Battle	226
Remarks on the Advance in Line of Battle	230
Art. 2.—Oblique March in Line of Battle	231
Remarks on the Oblique March	232
Art. 3.—To Halt the Battalion, Marching in Line of Battle, and to Align it	233
Art. 4.—Change of Direction in Marching in Line of Battle	236
Art. 5.—To March in Retreat, in Line of Battle	238
Art. 6.—To Halt the Battalion Marching in Retreat, and to Face it to the Front	240
Art. 7.—Change of Direction in Marching in Retreat	241
Art. 8.—Passage of Obstacles, Advancing and Retreating	241
Art. 9.—To Pass a Defile, in Retreat, by the Right or Left	247
Art. 10.—To March by the Flank	250
Art. 11.—To Form the Battalion on the Right or Left, by File into Line of Battle	252
Art. 12.—Changes of Front	253
Change of Front Perpendicular to the Rear	256
Remarks on Changes of Front	258
Art. 13.—To Ploy the Battalion into Column Doubled on the Centre	259
To Form Double Columns from Simple Columns by Company	263
Deployment of the Double Column, Faced to the Front	266
To Form the Double Column into Line of Battle, Faced to the Right or Left	267
Remarks on the Deployment of the Double Column	269
Art. 14.—Dispositions against Cavalry	269
To Form Square, To Half Distance close Column	270
Form Square Right and Left into Line Wheel	271
Column Faced by the Rear Rank to March in Retreat	276
To Form Square Marching in Retreat	277
To Reduce Square	278
To Form Square from Line of Battle	278

	PAGE
Square in Four Ranks.....	279
Oblique Squares.....	284
To Form Oblique Square, from Battalion in Line.....	284
To Form Oblique Square from Column.....	286
Column against Cavalry.....	287
To Form Square Forward on the Centre Companies.....	289
To Form Square in Four Ranks Forward on the Centre..	292
Art. 15.—Division Columns.....	293
To Deploy the Battalion into Division Columns.....	293
To Advance in Line of Division Columns.....	296
To Form Line of Division Columns from Double Columns	298
Art. 16.—The Rally	302
THE BAYONET EXERCISE.....	305
General Principles of the Bayonet Exercise.....	305
The Guard, The Means of Locomotion.....	305
Use of the Arms in Attack.....	306
The Combination of the Use of Arms and Legs.....	306
The Parries.....	306
Instruction, The Guard.....	307
Advance, Retreat, Right Volt.....	308
Left Volt, Right Rear Volt, Left Rear Volt.....	309
Observations, The Development.....	309
The Passage, The Leap to the Rear, The Thrust	310
The Lunge.....	311
Lunge-Out.....	312
The Four Directions of Attack.....	313
In Prime, In Seconde, In Tierce.....	313
In Quarte.....	314
The Parries, The Parry in Prime.....	314
The Parry in Seconde.....	315
The Parry in Tierce, The Parry in Quarte.....	316
The Parry in High Tierce, The Parry in High Quarte....	317
Combination of the High Parries.....	318
Guards against Infantry and Cavalry.....	318
Guard against Infantry	318
Guard against Cavalry	319
The Shortened Thrust.....	320
The Thrust Shortened on the Left	320
Blows with the Butt of the Piece	321
The Blow to the Front.....	321
For Blow to the Rear, For Blow to the Right.....	322
The Directions of Attack Combined with each other	323
THE SMALL SWORD EXERCISE.....	324
MANUAL OF THE SWORD OR SABRE.....	331



NOMENCLATURE OF THE MUSKET.

THE principal parts of a musket are—1. The Barrel, 2. The Lock; 3. The Stock; 4. The Rammer; 5. The Mounting. These several parts will be understood by reference to the plate, where they are marked, as follows :—

- 1—The Upper-band.
- 2—The Middle-band.
- 3—The Tail-band.
- 4—The Barrel.
- 5—The Swell.
- 6—The Guard.
- 7—The Swivels.
- 8—The Small of the Stock.
- 9—The Butt.
- 10—The Heel of the Butt.
- 11—The Toe or Beak of Butt.
- 12—The Lock.
- 13—The Rammer.
- 14—The Trigger.
- 15—The Blade of Bayonet.
- 16—The Shank of Bayonet.
- 17—The Socket.
- 18—The Clasp.
- 19—The Lock-plate.
- 20—The Hammer.
- 21—The Main Spring.
- 22—The Sling.

There are also—The Upper, Middle, and Tail Pipe; Butt of Rammer, and Little End of same.

The parts of the Barrel are designated, as; The Muzzle, Breech, Bore, Sight and Tang.

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

General Rules and Division of the School of the Soldier

THE thorough and complete instruction of the recruit in the fundamental principles of tactics is necessary to the proper execution of all military exercises, therefore, too much care cannot be taken by the instructor in teaching the preliminary lessons, which constitute the school of the soldier.

The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor never requires a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it; and he executes, himself, the movement which he commands, so as to join example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take, by himself, the position which is explained—teaches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence—and sees that all the movements are performed without precipitation.

Each movement should be understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

The instructor allows the men to rest at the end of each part of the lesson, or oftener, if he thinks proper, especially at the commencement; for this purpose he commands **REST**.

At the command **REST**, the soldier is no longer required to preserve immobility, or to remain in his place. If the instructor wishes merely to relieve the attention of the recruit, he commands, *in place*—**REST**; the soldier is then not required to preserve his immobility, but he always keeps one of his feet in its place.

When the instructor wishes to commence the instruction, he commands—**ATTENTION**; at this command, the soldier takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

The *School of the Soldier* will be divided into three parts; the first, comprehending what ought to be taught to recruits without arms; the second, the manual of arms, the loadings and firings; the third, the principles of alignment, the march by the front, the different steps, the march by the flank, the principles of wheeling, and those of change of direction; also, long marches in double quick time and the run.

Each part will be divided into lessons, for convenience of instruction.

Commands.

There are three kinds.

The command of *caution*, which is *attention*.

The *preparatory command*, which indicates the movement which is to be executed.

The command of *execution*, such as *march* or *halt*, or, in the manual of arms, the part of command which causes an execution.

The tone of command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

The command *attention* is pronounced at the top of the voice, dwelling on the last syllable.

The command of *execution* will be pronounced in a tone firm and brief.

Commands of caution and the preparatory commands are herein distinguished by *italics*, those of execution by CAPITALS.

Those preparatory commands which, from their length, are difficult to be pronounced at once, must be divided into two or three parts, with an ascending progression in the tone of command, but always in such a manner that the tone of execution may be more energetic and elevated; the divisions are indicated by a hyphen. The parts of commands which are placed in a parenthesis, are not pronounced.

PART FIRST.

This will be taught, if practicable, to one recruit at a time; but three or four may be united, when the number be great, compared with that of the instructors. In this case,

the recruits will be placed in a single rank at one pace from each other. In this part, the recruits will be without arms.

LESSON I.

Position of the Soldier.

Heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle;

The knees straight without stiffness;

The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;

The shoulders square and falling equally;

The arms hanging naturally;

The elbows near the body;

The palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;

The head erect and square to the front, without constraint;

The chin near the stock, without covering it;

The eyes fixed straight to the front, and striking the ground about the distance of fifteen paces.

Remarks on the Position of the Soldier.

Heels on the same line;

Because, if one were in rear of the other, the shoulder on that side would be thrown back, or the position of the soldier would be constrained.

Heels more or less closed;

Because, men who are knock-kneed, or who have legs with large calves, cannot, without constraint, make their heels touch while standing.

The feet equally turned out and not forming too large an angle;

Because, if one foot were turned out more than the other, a shoulder would be deranged, and if both feet be too much turned out, it would

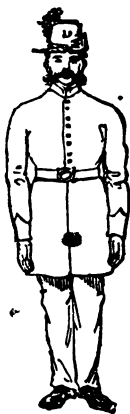


Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.

not be practicable to incline the upper part of the body forward without rendering the whole position unsteady.

Knees extended without stiffness ;

Because, if stiffened, constraint and fatigue would be unavoidable.

The body erect on the hips ;

Because, it gives equilibrium to the position. The instructor will observe that many recruits have the bad habit of dropping a shoulder, of drawing in a side, or of advancing a hip, particularly the right, when under arms. These are defects he will labor to correct.

The upper part of the body inclined forward ;

Because, commonly, recruits are disposed to do the reverse, to project the belly, and to throw back the shoulders, when they wish to hold themselves erect, from which result great inconveniences in marching. The habit of inclining forward the upper part of the body is so important to contract, that the instructor must enforce it at the beginning, particularly with recruits who have naturally the opposite habit.

Shoulders square ;

Because, if the shoulders be advanced beyond the line of the breast, and the back arched (the defect called *round shouldered*, not uncommon among recruits), the man cannot align himself, nor use his piece with address. It is important, then, to correct this defect, and necessary to that end that the coat should set easy about the shoulders and arm-pits ; but in correcting this defect, the instructor will take care that the shoulders be not thrown too much to the rear, which would cause the belly to project, and the small of the back to be curved.

The arms hanging naturally, elbows near the body, the palm of the hand a little turned to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons ;

Because, these positions are equally important to the *shoulder-arms*, and to prevent the man from occupying more space in a rank than is necessary to a free use of the piece ;

they have, moreover, the advantage of keeping in the shoulders.

The face straight to the front, and without constraint;

Because, if there be stiffness in the latter position, it would communicate itself to the whole of the upper part of the body, embarrass its movements, and give pain and fatigue.

Eyes direct to the front.

Because, this is the surest means of maintaining the shoulders in line—an essential object, to be insisted on and attained.

The instructor having given the recruit the position of the soldier without arms, will now teach him the turning of the head and eyes. He will command:

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT. 2. FRONT.

At the word *right*, the recruit will turn the head gently, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye in a line with the buttons of the coat, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

At the second command, the head will resume the direct or habitual position.

The movement of *Eyes*—LEFT will be executed by inverse means.

The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which will happen if the movement of the former be too sudden.

In advanced stages of drill this command is given as *Right* (or left) *Dress*, and is the governing principle of all alignments.

The object of turning the head, is for the recruit to assure himself that he is in line, when forming a portion of a line composed of six or more.

On executing the order, if he have but a glimpse of the left cheek of the second man from him, he will be in line; if he see too much of the side face he will be too far to the front; and if no portion of the cheek be seen he is too far

to the rear, in both cases the correction must be made by gradual movement.

When the instructor shall wish the recruit to pass from the state of attention to that of ease, he will command :

REST.

To cause a resumption of the habitual position, the instructor will command :

1. *Attention.* 2. *SQUAD.*

At the first word, the recruit will fix his attention ; at the second, he will resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

LESSON II.

Facings.

Facing to the right and left will be executed in one *time*, or pause. The instructor will command :

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right (or left)—FACE.*

At the second command, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising the toes a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, and on the same line.

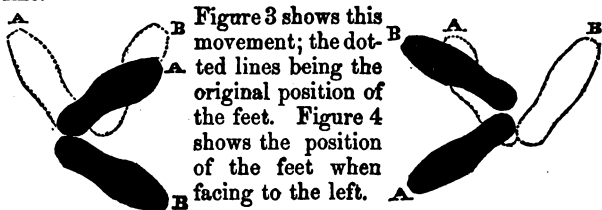


Fig. 3.

Fig. 4.

The full face to the rear (or front) will be executed in two *times*, or pauses. The instructor will command :

1. *Squad.* 2. *ABOUT—FACE.*

At the word *about*, the recruit will turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from the

left heel, the feet square to each other. At the command "*Face*," the soldier raising the points of the feet, or toes, and keeping the hams straight, will turn on both heels, and face to the rear, carrying back at the same time the right heel to the side of the left.

The first movement is shown by Figures 5 and 7, the dotted lines showing the original positions of the feet. Figures 6 and 8 show the completion of the movement.



Fig. 5.

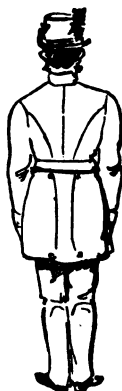


Fig. 6.



Fig. 7.

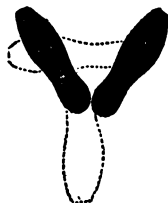


Fig. 8.

LESSON III.

Principles of the Direct Step.

The length of the direct step or pace, in common time

will be twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and in swiftness, at the rate of ninety in a minute.

The instructor, seeing the recruit confirmed in his position, will explain to him the principle and mechanism of this step—placing himself six or seven paces from, and facing to, the recruit. He will himself execute slowly the step in the way of illustration, and then command :

1. *Squad, forward.* 2. *Common time.*

3. MARCH.

At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of the body on the right leg, without bending the left knee.

At the third command, he will smartly, but without a jerk, carry straight forward the left foot twenty-eight inches from the right, the sole near the ground, the ham extended, the toe a little depressed, and, as also the knee, slightly turned out; he will, at the same time, throw the weight of the body forward, and plant flat the left foot, without shock, precisely at the distance where it finds itself from the right, when the weight of the body is brought forward, the whole of which will now rest on the advanced foot. The recruit will next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above, the heel twenty-eight inches from the heel of the left foot, and thus continue to march without crossing the legs, or striking the one against the other, without turning the shoulders, and preserving always the face direct to the front.

When the instructor shall wish to arrest the march, he will command :

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant when either foot is coming to the ground, the foot in the rear will be brought up, and planted by the side of the other, without shock.

The instructor will indicate, from time to time, to the recruit, the cadence of the step by giving the command *one* at the instant of raising a foot, and *two* at the instant it ought to be planted, observing the cadence of ninety steps in a

minute. This method will contribute greatly to impress upon the mind the two motions into which the step is naturally divided.

It is essential to throw the weight of the body on the right leg, in order to leave the left leg free to be moved forward.

The toe is depressed, that the foot may come flat to the ground, which is necessary to avoid the wavering of the body, that would be the consequence of the heel first reaching the ground.

By keeping the head square to the front, the shoulders are prevented from turning, and the proper direction of march ensured.

It is important, that the instructor assure himself, that the principles of the step are well observed, in order to correct promptly all mistakes; for this purpose he will frequently throw himself ten or twelve paces to the front, when, if he do not see the sole of the shoe while the recruit is raising, advancing, and planting his foot; nor observe any wavering of the shoulders, he may be sure the movement is properly performed.

Common time will be employed only in the first and second parts of the School of the Soldier. As soon as the recruit has acquired steadiness, has become established in the principles of shouldered arms, and in the mechanism, length and swiftness of the step in common time, he will be practised only in quick time, the double quick time, and the run.

The principles of the step in quick time, are the same as for common time, but its swiftness is at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute.

The instructor wishing the squad to march in quick time, will command:

1. *Squad, forward.* 2. MARCH.

LESSON IV.

Principle of the Double Quick Step.

The length of the double quick step is thirty-three inches,

and its swiftness at the rate of one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute.

The instructor wishing to teach the recruits the principles and mechanism of the double quick step, will command :

1. *Double quick step.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the recruit will raise his hands to a level with his hips, the hands closed, the nails towards the body, the elbows to the rear.

At the second command, he will raise to the front his left leg bent, in order to give to the knee the greatest elevation, the part of the leg between the knee and the instep vertical, the toe depressed ; he will then replace his foot in its former position ; with the right leg he will execute what has just been prescribed for the left, and the alternate movement of the legs will be continued until the command :

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

At the second command, the recruit will bring the foot, which is raised by the side of the other, and dropping at the same time his hands by his side, will resume the position of the soldier without arms.

The instructor placing himself seven or eight paces from, and facing the recruit, will indicate the cadence by the commands, *one* and *two*, given alternately at the instant each foot should be brought to the ground, which at first will be in common time, but its rapidity will be gradually augmented.

The recruit being sufficiently established in the principles of this step, the instructor will command :

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Double quick.*
3. MARCH.

At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of his body on the right leg.

At the second command, he will place his arms as indicated.

At the third command, he will carry forward the left

foot, the leg slightly bent, the knee somewhat raised—will plant his left foot, the toe first, thirty-three inches from the right, and with the right foot will then execute what has just been prescribed for the left. This alternate movement of the legs will take place by throwing the weight of the body on the foot that is planted, and by allowing a natural oscillatory motion to the arms.

The double quick step may be executed with different degrees of swiftness. Under urgent circumstances the cadence of this step may be increased to one hundred and eighty per minute. At this rate a distance of four thousand yards would be passed over in about twenty-five minutes.

The recruits will be exercised also in running.

The principles are the same as for the double quick step, the only difference consisting in a greater degree of swiftness.

It is recommended in marching at double quick time, or the run, that the men should breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed. Experience has proved that, by conforming to this principle, a man can pass over a much longer distance, and with less fatigue.

The squad being in march in double quick time, the instructor will occasionally cause it to mark time by the command:

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

The men will then mark double quick time, without altering the cadence of the step, and will cease at the command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

The instructor will pay great attention to regulating the cadence of the step, when giving instruction in the double quick step, as it is of the greatest importance that the men keep together when moving with this step, and this can only be done by having a correct appreciation of the time.

PART SECOND.

General Rules.

The instructor will not pass the men to the second part until they shall be well established in the position of the body and in the manner of marching at the different steps.

He will then unite four men, whom he will place in the same rank touching elbows, and instruct them in the position of shouldered arms.

LESSON I.

Principles of Shouldered Arms.

The recruit being placed in the position of a soldier, the instructor will cause him to bend the right arm slightly, and place the piece in it in the following manner:

The piece in the right hand—the barrel nearly vertical and resting in the hollow of the shoulder—the guard to the front, the arm hanging nearly at its full length near the body: the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together, and grasping the swell of the stock just under the cock, which rests on the little finger.

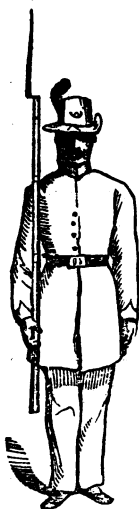


Fig. 9.

Finally, the instructor will take great care that the piece, at a shoulder, be not carried too high nor too low; if too high, the right elbow would spread out, the soldier would occupy too much space in his rank, and the piece be made to waver; if too low, the files would be too much closed, the soldier would not have the necessary space to handle his piece with facility, the right arm would become too much fatigued, and would draw down the shoulder. Figure 9.

LESSON II.

Manual of Arms.

The manual of arms will be taught to four men, placed, at first, in one rank, elbow to elbow, and afterwards in two ranks, and will be taught in the following progression: The instructor will command:

*Support—ARMS.**One time and three motions..*

First motion.—Bring the piece, with the right hand, perpendicularly to the front and between the eyes, the barrel to the rear; seize the piece with the left hand at the lower band, raise this hand as high as the chin, and seize the piece at the same time with the right hand four inches below the cock.

Second motion.—Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the front; carry the piece to the left shoulder, and pass the fore-arm extended on the breast between the right hand and the cock; support the cock against the left fore-arm, the left hand resting on the right breast.

Third motion.—Drop the right hand by the side. Figure 10.

When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command.



Fig. 10.

REST.

At this command, the recruits will bring up smartly the right hand to the handle of the piece (small of the stock), when they will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness of position.

When the instructor may wish the recruits to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *SQUAD.*

At the second word, the recruits will resume the position of the third motion of *support arms*.

*Shoulder—ARMS.**One time and three motions.*

First motion.—Grasp the piece with the right hand under and against the left fore-arm; seize it with the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended; detach the piece slightly from the shoulder, the left fore-arm along the stock.

Second motion.—Carry the piece vertically to the right shoulder with both hands, the rammer to the front, change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

Third motion.—Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

*Present—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—With the right hand bring the piece erect before the centre of the body, the rammer to the front: at the same time seize the piece with the left hand half-way between the guide sight and lower band, the thumb extended along the barrel and against the stock, the fore-arm horizontal and resting against the body, the hand as high as the elbow.

Second motion.—Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand below and against the guard. Figure 11.



Fig. 11.

*Shoulder—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Bring the piece to the right shoulder, at the same time change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

*Order—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Seize the piece briskly with the left hand near the upper band, and detach it slightly from the shoulder with the right hand: loosen the grasp of the right hand, lower the piece with the left, re-seize the piece with the right hand above the lower band, the little finger in rear of the barrel, the butt about four inches from the ground, the right hand supported against the hip, drop the left hand by the side.

Second motion.—Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground, by opening slightly the fingers, and take the position about to be described.

Position of Order Arms.

The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and the fore-finger extended along the stock; the other fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the right shoulder; the rammer in front; the toe (or beak), of the butt, against, and in a line with the toe of the right foot, the barrel perpendicular. Figure 12.



Fig. 12.

*Shoulder—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Raise the piece vertically with the right

hand to the height of the right breast, and opposite the shoulder, the elbow close to the body; seize the piece with the left hand below the right, and drop quickly the right hand to grasp the piece at the swell of the stock, the thumb and the fore-finger embracing the guard; press the piece against the shoulder with the left hand, the right arm nearly straight.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

Load in Nine Times.

1. LOAD.*

One time and one motion.

Grasp the piece with the left hand as high as the right elbow, and bring it vertically opposite the middle of the body, shift the right hand to the upper band, place the butt between the feet, the barrel to the front; seize it with the left hand, near the muzzle, which should be three inches from the body; carry the right hand to the cartridge box. Fig. 13.

2. Handle—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

Seize the cartridge with the thumb and next two fingers, and place it between the teeth.

3. Tear—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

Tear the paper to the powder, hold the cartridge upright between the thumb and first two fingers, near the top; in this position place it in front of and near the muzzle—the back of the hand to the front.



Fig. 13.

* Whenever the loadings and firings are to be executed, the instructor will cause the cartridge box to be brought to the front.

4. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

Empty the powder into the barrel; disengage the ball from the paper with the right hand and the thumb and first two fingers of the left; insert it into the bore, the pointed end uppermost, and press it down with the right thumb, seize the head of the rammer with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, the other fingers closed, the elbows near the body.

5. *Draw*—RAMMER.

One time and three motions.

First motion.—Half draw the rammer by extending the right arm; steady it in this position with the left thumb; grasp the rammer near the muzzle with the right hand, the little finger uppermost, the nails to the front, the thumb extended along the rammer.

Second motion.—Clear the rammer from the pipes by again extending the arm; the rammer in the prolongation of the pipes.

Third motion.—Turn the rammer, the little end of the rammer passing near the left shoulder; place the head of the rammer on the ball, the back of the hand to the front.

6. *Ram*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

Insert the rammer as far as the right, and steady it in this position with the thumb of the left hand; seize the rammer at the small end with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, the back of the hand to the front; press the ball home, the elbows near the body.

7. *Return*—RAMMER.

One time and three motions.

First motion.—Draw the rammer half-way out, and steady it in this position with the left thumb; grasp it near the muzzle with the right hand, the little finger uppermost, the nails to the front, the thumb along the rammer; clear the rammer from the bore by extending the arm, the nails to the front, the rammer in the prolongation of the bore.

Second motion.—Turn the rammer, the head of the rammer passing near the left shoulder, and insert it in the pipes until the right hand reaches the muzzle, the nails to the front.

Third motion.—Force the rammer home by placing the little finger of the right hand on the head of the rammer; pass the left hand down the barrel to the extent of the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

8. PRIMER.*

One time and two motions.



Fig. 14.

First motion.—With the left hand raise the piece till the hand is as high as the eye, grasp the small of the stock with the right hand; half face to the right; place, at the same time, the right foot behind and at right angles with the left; the hollow of the right foot against the left heel. Slip the left hand down to the lower band, the thumb along the stock, the left elbow against the body; bring the piece to the right side, the butt below the right fore-arm—the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the barrel upwards, the muzzle on a level with the eye. Figure 14.

Second motion.—Half cock with the thumb of the right hand, the fingers supported against the guard and the small of the stock—remove the old cap with one of the fingers of the right hand, and with the thumb and fore-finger of the same hand take a cap from the pouch, place it on the nipple, and press it down with the thumb; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

* If Maynard's primer be used, the command will be, *load in eight times*, and the eighth command will be, *shoulder arms*, and executed from a *return rammer*, in one time and two motions, as follows:

First motion.—Raise the piece with the left hand, and take the position of *shoulder arms*.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

9. *Shoulder—Arms.*

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Bring the piece to the right shoulder and support it there with the left hand, face to the front; bring the right heel to the side of and on a line with the left; grasp the piece with the right hand as indicated in the position of *shoulder arms*.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

READY.

One time and three motions

First motion.—Raise the piece slightly with the right hand, making a half face to the right on the left heel; carry the right foot to the rear, and place it at right angles to the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and against the left heel; grasp the piece with the left hand at the lower band and detach it slightly from the shoulder.

Second motion.—Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel upwards, the left thumb extended along the stock, the butt below the right fore-arm, the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the muzzle as high as the eye, the left elbow against the side; place at the same time the right thumb on the head of the cock, the other fingers under and against the guard.

Third motion.—Cock, and seize the piece at the small of the stock, without deranging the position of the butt.

AIM.

One time and one motion.

Raise the piece with both hands, and support the butt against the right shoulder; the left elbow down, the right as high as the shoulder; incline the head upon the butt, so that the right eye may perceive quickly the notch of the *hausse*, the front sight, and the object aimed at; the left

eye closed, the right thumb extended along the stock, the fore-finger on the trigger. Figure 15.



Fig. 15.

When the recruits are formed in two ranks to execute the firings, the front rank men will raise a little less the right elbow, in order to facilitate the aim of the rear rank men.

The rear rank men, in aiming, will each carry the right foot about eight inches to the right, and toward the left heel of the man next on the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward. Figure 16.

FIRE.

One time and one motion.

Press the fore-finger against the trigger, fire, without lowering or turning the head, and remain in this position.

Instructors will be careful to observe when the men fire, that they aim at some distinct object, and that the barrel

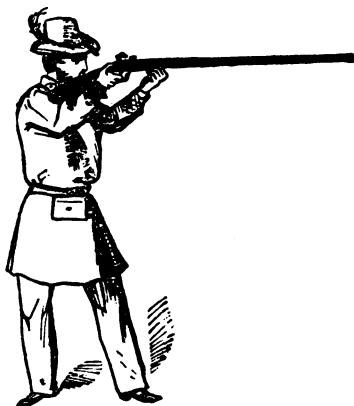


Fig 16.

be so directed that the line of fire and the line of sight be in the same vertical plane. They will often cause the firing to be executed on ground of different inclinations, in order to accustom the men to fire at objects either above or below them.

LOAD.

One time and one motion.

Bring down the piece with both hands, at the same time face to the front and take the first position of *load*. Each rear rank man will bring his right foot by the side of the left.

The men being in this position, the instructor will cause the loading to be continued by the commands and means proscribed.

If, after firing, the instructor should not wish the recruits to reload; he will command :

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand and resume the position of *shoulder arms*, at the same time face to the front, turning on the heel, and bring the right heel on a line with the left.

To accustom the recruits to wait for the command *fire*, the instructor, when they are in the position of *aim*, will command :

Recover—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

At the first part of the command, withdraw the finger from the trigger; at the command *arms*, retake the position of the third motion of *ready*.

The recruits being in the position of the third motion of *ready*, if the instructor should wish to bring them to a *shoulder*, he will command :

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

At the command *shoulder*, place the thumb upon the cock, and the fore-finger on the trigger, half-cock, and seize the small of the stock with the right hand. At the command *arms*, bring up the piece briskly to the right shoulder and retake the position of *shoulder arms*.

The recruits being at *shoulder arms*, when the instructor shall wish to fix bayonets, he will command :

Fix—BAYONETS.

One time and three motions.

First motion.—Grasp the piece with the left hand at the

height of the shoulder, and detach it slightly from the shoulder, with the right hand.

Second motion.—Quit the piece with the right hand, lower it with the left hand, opposite the middle of the body, and place the butt between the feet without shock; the rammer to the rear, the barrel vertical, the muzzle three inches from the body; seize it with the right hand at the upper band, and carry the left hand reversed to the handle of the sabre-bayonet.

Third motion.—Draw the sabre-bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the extremity of the barrel; seize the piece with the left hand, the arm extended, the right hand at the upper band.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece with the left hand and place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the swell of the stock, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the right arm nearly extended.

Second motion.—Drop briskly the left hand by the side.



Fig. 17.

Charge—BAYONET.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece slightly with the right hand and make a half face to the right on the left heel; place the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and three inches from the left heel, the feet square; seize the piece at the same time with the left hand a little above the lower band.

Second motion.—Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body; seize the small of the stock, at the same time, with the right hand,

which will be supported against the hip; the point of the sabre-bayonet as high as the eye. Figure 17.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand in facing to the front, place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; turn the right hand so as to embrace the guard, slide the left to the height of the shoulder, the right arm nearly extended.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

Trail—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—The same as the first motion of *order arms*.

Second motion.—Incline the muzzle slightly to the front, the butt to the rear and about four inches from the ground. The right hand supported at the hip, will so hold the piece that the rear rank men may not touch with their bayonets the men in the front rank.

Shoulder—ARMS.

At the command *shoulder*, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand, the little finger in rear of the barrel; at the command *arms*, execute what has been prescribed for the *shoulder* from the position of *order arms*.

Unfix—BAYONET.

One time and three motions.

First and second motions.—The same as the first and second motions of *fix bayonet*, except that, at the end of the second command, the thumb of the right hand will be placed on the spring of the sabre-bayonet, and the left hand will embrace the handle of the sabre-bayonet and the barrel, the thumb extended along the blade.



Fig. 18.

Third motion.—Press the thumb of the right hand on the spring, wrest off the sabre-bayonet, turn it to the right, the edge to the front, lower the guard until it touches the right hand, which will seize the back and the edge of the blade between the thumb and first two fingers, the other fingers holding the piece; (Fig. 18.) change the position of the hand without quitting the handle, return the sabre-bayonet to the scabbard, and seize the piece with the left hand, the arm extended.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece with the left hand and place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; grasp the piece with the right hand at the swell of the stock as explained in position of shoulder arms.

Second motion.—Drop the left hand by the side briskly.

Secure—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

First motion.—The same as the first motion of support arms, except with the right hand seize the piece at the small of the stock.

Second motion.—Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front; bring it opposite to the left shoulder, the butt end against the hip, the left hand at the lower band, the thumb as high as the chin and extended on the rammer; the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the left fore-arm against the piece.

Third motion.—Reverse the piece, pass it under the left arm, the left hand

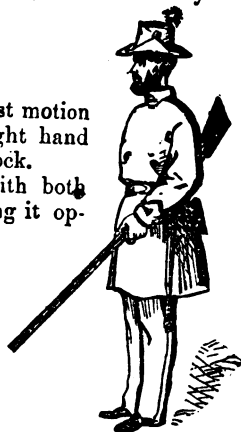


Fig. 19.

remaining at the lower band, the thumb on the rammer to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the hip, the right hand falling at the same time by the side. Figure 19.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece with the left hand, and seize it with the right hand at the small of the stock. The piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left fore-arm along the piece.

Second motion.—The same as the second motion of *Shoulder arms from a support.*

Third motion.—The same as the third motion of *Shoulder arms from a support.*

Right shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Detach the piece perpendicularly from the shoulder with the right hand, and seize it with the left between the lower band and guide-sight, raise the piece, the left hand at the height of the shoulder and four inches from it; place, at the same time, the right hand on the butt, the beak between the first two fingers, the other two fingers under the butt-plate.

Second motion.—Quit the piece with the left hand, raise and place the piece on the right shoulder with the right hand, the lock-plate upwards; let fall, at the same time, the left hand by the side. Figure 20.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece perpendicularly by extending the right arm to its full length, the rammer to the front, at the same time seize the piece with the left hand between the lower band and the guide-sight.

Second motion.—Quit the butt with the right hand, which will immediately embrace the guard, lower the piece to the position of shoulder arms, slide up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and closed. Drop the left hand by the side.

The men being at support arms, the instructor will sometimes cause pieces to be brought to the right shoulder. To this effect, he will command :

Right shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Seize the piece with the right hand, below and near the left fore-arm, place the left hand under the butt, the heel of the butt between the first two fingers.

Second motion.—Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock-plate upward, carrying it to the right shoulder, the left hand still holding the butt, the muzzle elevated; hold the piece in this position and place the right hand upon the butt the beak between the first two fingers, the other two fingers under the butt plate, and let fall the left hand to the side. Figure 64.

Support—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Raise the piece perpendicularly by extending the right arm to its full length, the rammer to the front, at the same time seize the piece with the left hand between the lower band and the guide-sight.

Second motion.—Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front, carry it opposite the left shoulder, slip the right hand to the small of the stock, place the left fore-arm extended, on the breast, and let fall the right hand by the side.



FIG. 20.

*Arms—AT WILL.**One time and one motion.*

At this command, carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder, with one or both hands, the muzzle elevated.

*Shoulder—ARMS.**One time and one motion.*

At this command, retake quickly the position of shoulder arms.

The recruits being at ordered arms, when the instructor shall wish to cause the pieces to be placed on the ground, he will command :

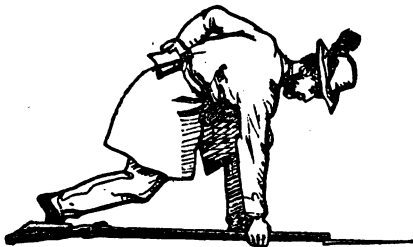
*Ground—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

Fig. 21.

First motion.—Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the left, at the same time seize the cartridge box with the left hand, bend the body, advance the left foot, the heel opposite the lower band ; lay the piece on the ground with the right hand, the toe of the butt on a line with the right toe, the knees slightly bent, the right heel raised. Fig. 21.

Second motion.—Rise up, bring the left foot by the side of the right, quit the cartridge box with the left hand, and drop the hands by the side.

*Raise—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Seize the cartridge box with the left hand, bend the body, advance the left foot opposite the lower band, and seize the piece with the right hand.

Second motion.—Raise the piece, bringing the left foot by the side of the right; turn the piece with the right hand, the rammer to the front; at the same time quit the cartridge box with the left hand, and drop the hands by the side.

Inspection of ARMS.

The recruits being at *ordered arms*, and having the sabre-bayonet in the scabbard, if the instructor wishes to cause an inspection of arms, he will command:—

*Inspection—ARMS.**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Seize the piece with the left hand below and near the upper band, carry it with both hands opposite the middle of the body, the butt between the feet, the rammer to the rear, the barrel vertical, the muzzle about three inches from the body; carry the left hand reversed to the sabre-bayonet, draw it from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel; grasp the piece with the left hand below and near the upper band, seize the rammer with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand bent, the other fingers closed.

Second motion.—Draw the rammer as has been explained in *loading*, and let it glide to the bottom of the bore, replace the piece with the left hand opposite the right shoulder, and retake the position of *ordered arms*.

The instructor will then inspect in succession the piece of each recruit, in passing along the front of the rank. Each, as the instructor reaches him, will raise smartly his piece with his right hand, seize it with the left between the lower band and guide sight, the lock to the front, the left hand at the height of the chin, the piece opposite to the left eye;

the instructor will take it with the right hand at the handle and after inspecting it will return it to the recruit who will receive it back with the right hand, and replace it in the position of *ordered arms*.

When the instructor shall have passed him, each recruit will retake the position prescribed at the command *inspection arms*, return the rammer, and resume the position of *ordered arms*.

If, instead of *inspection of arms*, the instructor, should merely wish to cause bayonets to be fixed, he will command :

Fix—BAYONET.

Take the first position of inspection of arms, fix bayonets as has been explained, and immediately resume the position of *ordered arms*.

If it be the wish of the instructor, after firing, to ascertain whether the pieces have been discharged, he will command :

Spring—RAMMERS.

Put the rammer in the barrel as has been explained above, and immediately retake the position of *ordered arms*.

The instructor, for the purpose stated, can take the rammer by the small end, and spring it in the barrel, or cause each recruit to make it ring in the barrel.

Each recruit, after the instructor passes him, will return rammer, and resume the position of *ordered arms*.

LESSON III.

To load in four times.

The object of this lesson is to prepare the recruits to load at will, and to cause them to distinguish the times which require the greatest regularity and attention, such as *charge cartridge*, *ram cartridge*, and *prime*. It will be divided as follows :

The first time will be executed at the end of the command.

The instructor will command :

1. *Load in four times.* 2. **LOAD.**

Execute the times to include charge cartridge.

TWO.

Execute the times to include ram cartridge.

THREE.

Execute the times to include prime.

FOUR.

Execute the time of *shoulder arms*.

To load at will.

The instructor will next teach loading at will, which will be executed as loading in four times, but continued, and without resting on either of the times. He will command:

1. *Load at will.* 2. **LOAD.**

The instructor will habituate the recruits, by degrees, to load with the greatest possible promptitude, each without regulating himself by his neighbor, and above all without waiting for him.

WHEN, after some days of exercise in the manual of arms, the four men shall well be established in their use, the instructor will always terminate the lesson by marching the men for some time in one rank, and at one pace apart, in common quick time, in order to confirm them more and more in the mechanism of the step; he will also teach them to mark time and to change step, which will be executed in the following manner:

To mark time.

The four men marching in the direct step, the instructor will command:

1. *Mark time.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant a foot is coming to the ground, the recruits will make a semblance of marching, by bringing the heels by the side of each other, and observing the cadence of the step, by raising each foot alternately without advancing.

The instructor, wishing the direct step to be resumed, will command:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, which will be given as prescribed above, the recruits will retake the step of twenty-eight inches.

To change step.

The squad being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Change step.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring the foot, which is in rear by the side of that which is in front, and step off again with the foot which was in front.

To march backwards.

The instructor, wishing the squad to march backwards, will command:

1. *Squad backward.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, the recruits will step off smartly with the left foot fourteen inches to the rear, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on, with the feet in succession, till the command *halt*, which will always be preceded by the caution *squad*. The men will halt at this command, and bring back the foot in front by the side of the other.

This step will always be executed in quick time.

The instructor will be watchful that the recruits march straight to the rear, and that the erect position of the body and the piece be not deranged.

The squad will now be instructed in the firings, to which great care must be bestowed by the instructor. Particularly when using cartridges, as the recruit is apt to load in an excited manner, and by slurring the motions lose time and interfere with the adjoining files.

Firings.

The firings are direct or oblique, and will be executed as follows:

The direct fire.

The instructor will give the following commands:

1. *Fire by squad.* 2. *Squad.* 3. *READY.* 4. *AIM.* 5. *FIRE.*
6. *LOAD.*

These several commands will be executed as has been prescribed in the *Manual of arms*. At the third command, the men will come to the position of *ready*, as heretofore explained. At the fourth, they will aim according to the rank in which each may find himself placed, the rear rank men inclining forward a little the upper part of the body, in order that their pieces may reach as much beyond the front rank as possible.

At the sixth command, they will load their pieces and return immediately to the position of *ready*.

The instructor will recommence the firing by the commands:

1. *Squad.* 2. *AIM.* 3. *FIRE.* 4. *LOAD.*

When the instructor wishes the firing to cease, he will command:

Cease firing.

At this command, the men will cease firing, but will load

their pieces if unloaded, and afterwards bring them to a shoulder.

• *Oblique Firings.*

The oblique firings will be executed to the right and left, and by the same commands as the direct fire, with this single difference—the command *aim* will always be preceded by the caution, *right* or *left oblique*.

Position of the two ranks in the Oblique Fire to the right.

At the command *ready*, the two ranks will execute what has been prescribed for the direct fire.

At the cautionary command, *right oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the right shoulder and look steadily at the object to be hit.

At the command *aim*, each front rank man will aim to the right without deranging the feet; each rear rank man will advance the left foot about eight inches towards the right heel of the next man on the right of his file leader and aim to the right inclining the upper part of the body forward and bending a little the left knee.

Oblique fire to the left is executed as above prescribed except that the left shoulder is thrown back and the rear rank man steps off with his right foot, eight inches towards the right heel of the man on the right of his file leader.

To fire by file.

The fire by file will be executed by the two ranks, the files of which will fire successively, and without regulating on each other, except for the first fire.

The instructor will command :

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Squad.* 3. *READY.* 4. *COMMENCE FIRING.*

At the third command, the two ranks will take the position prescribed in the direct fire.

At the fourth command, the file on the right will aim and fire.

The man of this file will load their pieces briskly and fire

a second time; reload and fire again, and so on, in continuation.

The second file will aim, at the instant the first brings down pieces to reload, and will conform in all respects to that which has just been prescribed for the first file.

After the first fire, the front and rear rank men will not be required to fire at the same time.

Each man, after loading, will return to the position of ready and continue to fire.

When the instructor wishes the fire to cease, he will command:

Cease—FIRING.

At this command, the men will cease firing. If they have fired they will load their pieces and bring them to a shoulder; if at the position of *ready*, they will half-cock and shoulder arms. If in the position of *aim*, they will bring down their pieces, half-cock, and shoulder arms.

To fire by rank.

The fire by rank will be executed by each entire rank, alternately.

The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Squad.* 3. *READY.* 4. *Rear rank.*
5. *AIM.* 6. *FIRE.* 7. *LOAD.*

At the third command, the two ranks will take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the direct fire.

At the seventh command, the rear rank will execute that which has been prescribed in the direct fire, and afterwards take the position of *ready*.

As soon as the instructor sees several men of the rear rank in the position of *ready*, he will command:

1. *Front rank.* 2. *AIM.* 3. *FIRE.* 4. *LOAD.*

At these commands, the men in the front rank will fire, load, and return to the position of *ready*.



Fig. 22.

To fire and load kneeling.

In this exercise the squad will be supposed loaded and drawn up in one rank. The instruction will be given to each man individually, without times or motions, and in the following manner.

The instructor will command :

FIRE AND LOAD KNEELING.

At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; then carry the right foot to the rear and to the right of the left heel, and in a position convenient for placing the right knee upon the ground in bending the left leg; place the right knee upon the ground; lower the piece, the left fore-arm supported upon the thigh on the same side, the right hand on the small of the stock, the butt resting on the right thigh, the left hand supporting the piece near the lower band.

He will next move the right leg to the left around the knee supported on the ground, until this leg is nearly perpendicular to the direction of the left foot, and thus seat himself comfortably on the right heel.

Raise the piece with the right hand and support it with the left, holding it near the lower band, the left elbow resting on the left thigh near the knee; seize the hammer with the thumb, the fore-finger under the guard, cock and seize the piece at the small of the stock; bring the piece to the shoulder, *aim and fire.* Figure 22.

Bring the piece down as soon as it is fired, and support it with the left hand, the butt resting against the right thigh; carry the piece to the rear rising on the knee, the barrel downwards, the butt resting on the ground: in this position support the piece with the left hand at the upper band, draw cartridge with the right and load the piece, ramming the ball, if necessary, with both hands.

When loaded, bring the piece to the front with the left hand, which holds it at the upper band; seize it, at the same time, with the right hand at the small of the stock; turn the piece, the barrel uppermost and nearly horizontal, the left elbow resting on the left thigh; half-cock, remove the old cap and prime, rise, and return to the ranks.

The second man will then be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on, through the remainder of the squad.

To fire and load lying.

In this exercise the squad will be in one rank and loaded; the instruction will be given individually and without times or motions.

The instructor will command:

FIRE AND LOAD LYING.

At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move toward three paces and halt; he will then bring his piece to an order, drop on both knees, and place himself on the ground flat on his belly. In this position he will support the piece nearly horizontal with the left hand, holding it near the lower band, the butt end of the piece and the left elbow resting on the ground, the barrel uppermost; cock the piece with the right hand, and carry this hand to the small of the stock; raise the piece with both hands, press the butt against the shoulder, and resting on both elbows, *aim and fire*.

As soon as he has fired, bring the piece down and turn upon his left side, still resting on his left elbow; bring back the piece until the cock is opposite his breast, the butt end resting on the ground; take out a cartridge with the right hand; seize the small of the stock with this hand, holding the cartridge with the thumb and first two fingers; he will then throw himself on his back still holding the piece with both hands; carry the piece to the rear, place the butt between the heels, the barrel up, the muzzle elevated. In this position, charge cartridge, draw rammer, ram cartridge, and return rammer.

When finished loading, the man will turn again upon his left side, remove the old cap and prime, then raise the piece vertically, rise, turn about, and resume his position in the ranks.

The second man will be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on, throughout the squad.

PART THIRD.

WHEN the recruits are well established in the *principles and mechanism of the step, the position of the body, and the manual of arms*, the instructor will unite eight men, at least, and twelve men, at most, in order to teach them the principles of alignment, the principles of the touch of elbows in marching to the front, the principles of the march by the flank, wheeling from a halt, wheeling in marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide. He will place the squad in one rank elbow to elbow, and number the men from right to left.

LESSON I.

Alignments.

The instructor will at first teach the recruits to align themselves man by man, in order the better to make them comprehend the principles of alignment; to this end, he will command the two men on the right flank to march two paces to the front, and having aligned them, he will caution the remainder of the squad to move up, as they may be successively called, each by his number, and align themselves successively on the line of the first two men.

Each recruit, as designated by his number, will turn the head and eyes to the right as prescribed in the first lesson of the first part, and will march in *quick time two paces forward*, shortening the last, so as to find himself about six inches behind the new alignment, which he ought never to pass: he will next move up steadily by steps of two or three inches, the hams extended, to the side of the man next to him on the alignment, so that, without deranging the head,

the line of the eyes, or that of the shoulders, he may find himself in the exact line of his neighbor, whose elbow he will lightly touch without opening his own.

The instructor seeing the rank well aligned, will command:

FRONT.

At this, the recruits will turn eyes to the front, and remain firm.

Alignments to the left will be executed on the same principles.

When the recruits shall have thus learned to align themselves man by man, correctly, and without groping or jostling, the instructor will cause the entire rank to align itself at once by the command:

Right (or left)—DRESS.

At this, the rank, except the two men placed in advance as a basis of alignment, will move up in *quick time*, and place themselves on the new line, according to the principles prescribed.

The instructor, placed five or six paces in front, and facing the rank, will carefully observe that, the principles are followed, and then pass to the flank that has served as, the basis, to verify the alignment.

The instructor, seeing the greater number of the rank aligned will command:

FRONT.

The instructor may afterwards order *this* or *that* file *forward* or *back*, designating each by its number. The file or files designated, only, will slightly turn the head towards the basis, to judge how much they ought to move up or back, steadily place themselves on the line, and then turn eyes to the front, without a particular command to that effect.

Alignments to the rear will be executed on the same principles, the recruits stepping back a little beyond the line, and then dressing up according to the principles prescribed, the instructor commanding

Right (or left) backward—DRESS.

After each alignment, the instructor will examine the position of the men, and cause the rank to come to *ordered arms*, to prevent too much fatigue, and also the danger of negligence at *shouldered arms*.

LESSON II.

The men having learned, in the first and second parts, to march with steadiness in common time, and to take steps equal in length and swiftness, will be exercised in the third part only in *quick time*, *double quick time*, and the *run*: the instructor will cause them to execute successively, at these different gaits, the march to the front, the facing about in marching, the march by the flank, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the changes of direction to the side of the guide.

The instructor will inform the recruits that at the command *march*, they will always move off in *quick time*, unless this command should be preceded by that of *double quick*.

To march to the front.

The rank being correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the front, he will place a well instructed man on the right or the left, according to the side on which he may wish the guide to be, and command:

1. *Squad, forward.* 2. *Guide right (or left.)* 3. *MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the rank will step off smartly with the left foot; the guide will take care to march straight to the front, keeping his shoulders always in a square with that line.

The instructor will observe, in marching to the front, that the men touch lightly the elbow towards the side of the guide.

The men being well established in the principles of the direct march, the instructor will exercise them in marching obliquely. The rank being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, each man will make a half face to the right (or left), and will then march straight forward in the new direction. As the men no longer touch elbows, they will glance along the shoulders of the nearest files, towards the side to which they are obliquing, and will regulate their steps so that the shoulders shall always be behind that of their next neighbor on that side, and that his head shall conceal the heads of the other men in the rank. Besides this, the men should preserve the same length of pace, and the same degree of obliquity.

The instructor wishing to resume the primitive direction, will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, each man will make a half face to the left (or right), and all will then march straight to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

To march to the front in double quick time.

When the several principles, heretofore explained, have become familiar to the recruits, and they shall be well established in the position of the body, the bearing of arms, and the mechanism, length, and swiftness of the step, the instructor will pass them from *quick* to *double quick* time, and the reverse, observing not to make them march obliquely in double quick time, till they are well established in the cadence of this step.

The squad being at a march in quick time, the instructor will command :

1. *Double quick.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will step off in double quick time. The men will endeavor to follow the principles laid down in the first part of this book, and to preserve the alignment.

When the instructor wishes the squad to resume the step in quick time, he will command :

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will retake the step in quick time.

The squad being at a halt, the instructor will cause it to march in double quick time, by preceding the command *march*, by *double quick*.

The instructor will endeavor to regulate well the cadence of this step.

To face about in marching.

If squad be marching in quick, or double quick time, and the instructor should wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *Squad right about.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant the left foot is coming to the ground, the recruit will bring this foot to the ground, and turning on it, will face to the rear; he will then place the right foot in the new direction, and step off with the left foot.

In marching at *double quick time*, the men will always carry their pieces on the *right shoulder*, or at a *trail*. *This rule is general.*

If the instructor shall wish the pieces carried at a trail, he will give the command *trail arms*, before the command *double quick*. If, on the contrary, this command be not given, the men will shift their pieces to the right shoulder at the command *double quick*. In either case, at the command *halt*, the men will bring their pieces to the position of *shoulder arms*. *This rule is general.*

LESSON III.

To march by the flank.

The rank being at a halt, and correctly aligned, the instructor will command:

1. *Squad, right*—FACE. 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

At the last part of the first command, the rank will face

to the right; the even numbered men, after facing to the right, will step quickly to the right side of the odd numbered men, the latter standing fast, so that when the movement is executed, the men will be formed into files of two men abreast.

At the third command, the squad will step off smartly with the left foot; the files keeping aligned, and preserving their intervals.

The march by the left flank will be executed by the same commands, substituting the word *left* for *right*, and by inverse means; in this case, the even numbered men, after facing to the left, will stand fast, and the odd numbered will place themselves on their left.

The instructor will place a well instructed soldier, by the side of the recruit who is at the head of the rank, to regulate the step, and to conduct him; and it will be enjoined on this recruit to march always elbow to elbow with the soldier.

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

At the second command, the rank will halt, and afterwards no man will stir, although he may have lost his distance. This prohibition is necessary, to habituate the men to a constant preservation of their distances.

At the third command, each man will front by facing to the left, if marching by the right flank, and by a face to the right, if marching by the left flank. The rear rank men will at the same time move quickly into their places, so as to form the squad again into one rank.

When the men have become accustomed to marching by the flank, the instructor will cause them to change direction by file; for this purpose he will command:

1. *By file left (or right).* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the first file will change direction to the left (or right) in describing a small arc of a circle, and will then march straight forward; the two men of this file in wheeling, will keep up the touch of the elbows, and the man on the side to which the wheel is made, will shorten

the first three or four steps. Each file will come successively to wheel on the same spot where that which preceded it wheeled.

The instructor will also cause the squad to face by the right or left flank in marching, and for this purpose will command :

1. *Squad by the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, which will be given a little before either foot comes to the ground, the recruits will turn the body, plant the foot that is raised in the new direction, and step off with the other foot without altering the cadence of the step; the men will double or undouble rapidly.

If, in facing by the right or the left flank, the squad should face to the rear, the men will come into one rank, as prescribed for facing to the front. It is to be remarked that it is the men who are in rear who always move up to form into single rank, and in such manner as never to invert the order of the numbers in the rank.

If, when the squad has been faced to the rear, the instructor should cause it to face by the left flank, it is the even numbers who will double by moving to the left of the odd numbers; but if by the right flank, it is the odd numbers who will double to the right of the even numbers.

This lesson, like the preceding one, will be practiced with pieces at a shoulder; but the instructor may, to give relief by change, occasionally order *support arms*, and he will require of the recruits marching in this position, as much regularity as in the former.

The march by the flank in double quick time.

The principles of the march by the flank in double quick time, are the same as in quick time. The instructor will take care always to give the command *double quick* before that of *march*.

LESSON IV.

WHEELINGS.

General principles of Wheeling.

Wheelings are of two kinds: from halts, or on fixed pivots, and in march, or on moveable pivots.

Wheeling on a fixed pivot takes place in passing a corps from the order in battle to the order in column, or from the latter to the former.

Wheels in marching take place in changes of direction in column, as often as this movement is executed to the side opposite to the guide.

In wheels from a halt, the pivot-man only turns in his place, without advancing or receding.

In the wheels in marching, the pivot takes steps of nine or eleven inches, according as the squad is marching in quick or double quick time, so as to clear the wheeling point, which is necessary, in order that the subdivisions of a column may change direction without losing their distances, as will be explained in the school of the company.

The man on the wheeling flank will take the full step of twenty-eight inches, or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

Wheeling from a halt, or on a fixed pivot.

The rank being at a halt, the instructor will place a well-instructed man on the wheeling flank to conduct it, and then command:

1. *By squad, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, the rank will step off with the left foot, turning at the same time the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men to their left; the pivot-man will merely mark time in gradually turning his body, in order to conform himself to the movement of the marching flank; the man who conducts this flank will take steps of twenty-eight inches, and from the first step advance a little the left shoulder, cast his eyes

from time to time along the rank, and feel constantly the elbow of the next man lightly, but never push him.

The other men will feel lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot, resist pressure coming from the opposite side, and each will conform himself to the marching flank—shortening his step according to his approximation to the pivot.

The instructor will make the rank wheel round the circle once or twice before halting, in order to cause the principles to be the better understood, and he will be watchful that the centre does not break.

He will cause the wheel to the left to be executed according to the same principles.

When the instructor shall wish to arrest the wheel, he will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. **HALT.**

At the second command, the rank will halt, and no man stir. The instructor, going to the flank, opposite the pivot, will place the two outer men of that flank in the direction he may wish to give to the rank, without, however, displacing the pivot, who will conform the line of his shoulders to this direction. The instructor will take care to have between these two men, and the pivot, only the space necessary to contain the other men. He will then command:

Left (or right)—DRESS.

At this, the rank will place itself on the alignment of the two men established as the basis, in conformity with the principles prescribed.

The instructor will next command **FRONT.**

REMARKS ON THE PRINCIPLES OF THE WHEEL, FROM A HALT

Turn a little the head towards the marching flank, and fix the eyes on the line of the eyes of the men who are on that side.

Because, otherwise, it would be impossible for each man to regulate the length of his step so as to conform his own movement to that of the marching flank.

Touch lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot ;

In order that the files may not open out in the wheel.

Resist pressure that comes from the side of the marching flank ;

Because, if this principle be neglected, the pivot, which ought to be a fixed point, in wheels from a halt, might be pushed out of its place by pressure.

Wheeling in marching, or on a moveable pivot.

When the recruits have been brought to execute well the wheel from a halt, they will be taught to wheel in marching.

To this end, the rank being in march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to change direction to the reverse flank, (to the side opposite to the guide or pivot flank,) he will command :

1. *Right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH.

The first command will be given when the rank is yet *four* paces from the wheeling point.

At the second command the wheel will be executed in the same manner as from a halt, except that the touch of the elbow will remain towards the marching flank (or side of the guide) instead of the side of the actual pivot ; that the pivot man, instead of merely turning in his place, will conform himself to the movement of the marching flank, and feel lightly the elbow of the next man, take steps of full nine inches, and thus gain ground forward in describing a small curve so as to clear the point of the wheel. The middle of the rank will bend slightly to the rear. As soon as the movement shall commence, the man who conducts the marching flank will cast his eyes on the ground over which he will have to pass.

The wheel being ended, the instructor will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

The first command will be pronounced when *four* paces are yet required to complete the change of direction.

At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant of completing the wheel, the man who conducts the marching flank will direct himself straight forward; the pivot man and all the rank will retake the step of twenty-eight inches, and bring the head direct to the front.

Turning, or change of direction to the side of the guide.

The change of direction to the side of the guide, in marching, will be executed as follows: The instructor will command:

1. *Left (or right) turn.*
2. *MARCH.*

The first command will be given, when the rank is yet *four* paces from the turning point.

At the command *March*, to be pronounced at the instant the rank ought to turn, the guide will face to the left (or right) in marching, and move forward in the new direction without slackening or quickening the cadence, and without shortening or lengthening the step.

The whole rank will promptly conform itself to the new direction; to effect which, each man will advance the shoulder opposite to the guide, take the double quick step, to carry himself in the new direction, turn the head and eyes to the side of the guide, and retake the touch of the elbow on that side, in placing himself on the alignment of the guide, from whom he will take the step, and then resume the direct position of the head. Each man will thus arrive successively on the alignment.

Wheeling and changing direction to the side of the guide in double quick time.

When the recruits comprehend and execute well, in quick time, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide, the instructor will cause the same movements to be repeated in double quick time.

These various movements will be executed by the same commands and according to the same principles as in quick time, except that the command *double quick* will precede that

of march. In wheeling while marching, the pivot will take steps of eleven inches, and in the changes of direction to the side of the guide, the men on the side opposite the guide must increase the gait in order to bring themselves into line.

LESSON V.

Long marches in double quick time and the run.

The instructor will cause to be resumed the exercises in double quick time and the run, with arms and knapsacks.

He will cause long marches to be executed in double quick time, both by the front and by the flank, and by constant practice will lead the men to pass over a distance of five miles in sixty minutes. The pieces will be carried on either shoulder, and sometimes at a-trail.

He will also exercise them in long marches at a run, the pieces carried at will; the men will be instructed to keep as united as possible, without, however, exacting much regularity, which is impracticable.

The run, in actual service, will only be resorted to when it may be highly important to reach a given point with great promptitude.

TO STACK ARMS.

The men being at order arms with bayonets unfixed, the instructor will command:

Stack—ARMS.

At this command, the front rank man of every even-numbered file will pass his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand near the upper band; will place the butt a little in advance of his left toe, the barrel turned toward the body, and draw the rammer slightly from its place; the front rank man of every odd-numbered file will also draw the rammer slightly, and pass his piece to the man next on his left, who will seize it with the right hand near the

upper band, and place the butt a little in advance of the right toe of the man next on his right, the barrel turned to the front; he will then cross the rammers of the two pieces, the rammer of the piece of the odd-numbered man being inside; the rear rank man of every even file will also draw his rammer, lean his piece forward, the lock-plate downward, advance the right foot about six inches, and insert the rammer between the rammer and barrel of the piece of his front rank man; with his left hand he will place the butt of his piece on the ground, thirty-two inches in rear of, and perpendicular to, the front rank, and bringing back his right foot by the side of the left; the front rank man of every even file will at the same time lean the stack to the rear, quit it with his right hand, and force all the rammers down. The stack being thus formed, the rear rank man of every odd file will pass his piece into his left hand, the barrel to the front, and inclining it forward, will rest it on the stack.

If the rifle musket be used, and it is required to stack arms with the bayonets fixed, the following will be the method:

At the command *stack arms*, the front rank man of every even-numbered file will pass his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand above the middle band, and place the butt behind and near the right foot of the man next on the left, the barrel turned to the front. At the same time the front rank man of every odd-numbered file will pass his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand below the middle band, and handing it to the man next on the left; the latter will receive it with the right hand two inches above the middle band, throw the butt about thirty-two inches to the front, opposite to his right shoulder, inclining the muzzle toward him, and lock the shanks of the two bayonets; the lock of this second piece toward the right, and its shank above that of the first piece. The rear rank man of every even file will project his bayonet forward, and introduce it (using both hands) between and under the shanks of the two other bayonets. He will then abandon his piece to his file leader, who will receive it with

the right hand under the middle band, bring the butt to the front, holding up his own piece and the stack with the left hand, and place the butt of this third piece between the feet of the man next on the right, the S plate to the rear. The stack thus formed, the rear rank man of every odd file will pass his piece into his left hand, the barrel turned to the front, and sloping his bayonet forward, rest it on the stack.

The men of both ranks having taken the position of the soldier without arms, the instructor will command :

1. *Break ranks.* 2. *MARCH*

TO RESUME ARMS.

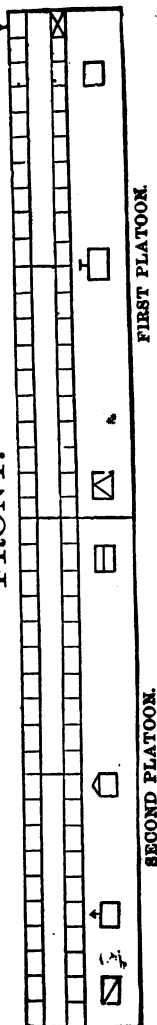
Both ranks being re-formed in rear of their stacks, the instructor will command :

Take—ARMS.

At this command, the rear rank man of every odd-numbered file will withdraw his piece from the stack; the front rank man of every even file will seize his own piece with the left hand and that of the man on his right with his right hand, both above the lower band; the rear rank man of the even file will seize his piece with the right hand below the lower band (if the rifle musket be used, the piece will be seized by the middle band); these two men will raise up the stack to loosen the rammers, or shanks of the bayonets. The front rank man of every odd file will facilitate the disengagement of the rammers, if necessary, by drawing them out slightly with the left hand, and will receive his piece from the hand of the man next on his left; the four men will retake the position of the soldier at order arms










END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

FRONT.



FIRST PLATOON.

SECOND PLATOON.

- Captain. 
- First Lieutenant. 
- Second Lieutenant. 
- Third Lieutenant. 
- First Sergeant. 
- Second Sergeant. 
- Third Sergeant. 
- Fourth Sergeant. 
- Fifth Sergeant. 

FORMATION OF A COMPANY.

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

Posts of Company Officers, Sergeants and Corporals.

The company officers and sergeants are nine in number, and will be posted in the following manner,:

The *captain* on the right of the company, touching with the left elbow.

The *first sergeant* in the rear rank, touching with the left elbow, and covering the captain. In the manœuvres he will be denominated *covering sergeant*, or *right guide* of the company.

The remaining officers and sergeants will be posted as file closers, and two paces behind the rear rank.

The *first lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the fourth section.

The *second lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the first platoon.

The *third lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the second platoon.

The *second sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the company. In the manœuvres he will be designated *left guide* of the company.

The *third sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the second platoon.

The *fourth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the first platoon.

The *fifth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the first platoon.

In the left or tenth company of the battalion, the second sergeant will be posted in the front rank, and on the left of the battalion.

The corporals will be posted in the front rank, on the right and left of platoons, according to height; the tallest

corporal and the tallest man will form the first file, the next two tallest men will form the second file, and so on, to the last file, which will be composed of the shortest corporal and the shortest man.

Absent officers and sergeants will be replaced—officers by sergeants, and sergeants by corporals. The colonel may detach a first lieutenant from one company to command another, of which both the captain and first lieutenant are absent; but this authority will give no right to a lieutenant to demand to be so detached.

The odd and even files, numbered as one, two, in the company, from right to left, will form groups of four men, who will be designated *comrades in battle*.

General rules and division of the School of the Company.

Instruction by company will always precede that by battalion, and the object being to prepare the soldiers for the higher school, the exercises of detail by company will be strictly adhered to, as well in respect to principles, as the order of progression herein prescribed.

There will be attached to a company undergoing elementary instruction, a captain, a covering sergeant, and a certain number of file closers, the whole posted in the manner indicated above, together with an officer denominated the *Instructor*.

The company will always be formed in two ranks. The instructor will then cause the files to be numbered, and for this purpose will command.

In each rank Count—Twos.

At this command, the men count in each rank, from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry and without turning the head, *one, two*, according to the place which each one occupies. He will also cause the company to be divided into platoons and sections, taking care that the first platoon is always composed of an even number of files.

LESSON I.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To open ranks.

The company being at ordered arms, the ranks and file closers, well aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause the ranks to be opened, he will direct the left guide to place himself on the left of the front rank, which being executed, he will command :

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Shoulder.*—ARMS. 4. *To the rear open order.*

At the fourth command, the covering sergeant, and the left guide, will step off smartly to the rear, four paces from the front rank, in order to mark the alignment of the rear rank. They will judge this distance by the eye, without counting the steps.

The instructor will place himself at the same time on the right flank, in order to observe, if these two non-commissioned officers are on a line parallel to the front rank, and if necessary, to correct their positions, which being executed, he will command :

5. MARCH.

At this command, the front rank will stand fast.

The rear rank will step to the rear, without counting the steps, and will place themselves on the alignment marked for this rank, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier.

The covering sergeant will align the rear rank on the left guide placed to mark the left of this rank.

The file closers will march to the rear at the same time with the rear rank, and will place themselves two paces from this rank when it is aligned.

The instructor seeing the rear rank aligned, will command :

6. FRONT.

At this command, the sergeant on the left of the rear rank will return to his place as a file closer.

The rear rank being aligned, the instructor will direct the captain and the covering sergeant to observe the men in their respective ranks, and to correct, if necessary, the positions of persons and pieces; during the execution of the manual of arms.

To close ranks.

The manual of arms being ended, the instructor will command :

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the rear rank will close up in quick time, each man directing himself on his file leader.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Alignments, in closed ranks.

The ranks being closed, the instructor will cause to be executed parallel and oblique alignments by the right and left, forward and backward, observing to place always two or four files to serve as a basis of alignment.

In alignments in closed ranks, the captain will superintend the front rank, and the covering sergeant the rear rank. They will habituate themselves to judge the alignment by the lines of the eyes and shoulders, in casting a glance of the eye along the front and rear of the ranks.

The moment the captain perceives the greater number of the front rank aligned, he will command *FRONT*, and rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the other men by the means prescribed in the school of the soldier. The rear rank will conform to the alignment of the front rank, superintended by the covering sergeant.

The ranks being steady, the instructor will place himself on the flank to verify their alignment. He will also see that each rear rank man covers accurately his file leader.

In all alignments, the file closers will preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

The alignments being ended, the instructor will cause to be executed the manual of arms.

The instructor, wishing to rest the men, without deranging the alignment, will first cause arms to be supported, or ordered, and then command :

In place--REST.

LESSON II.

ARTICLE FIRST.

The instructor will practice the company at the loading in four times and loading at will, causing the men to execute carefully the motions as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To fire by company.

The instructor, wishing to cause the fire by company to be executed, will command :

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence firing.*

At the first command, the captain will promptly place himself opposite the centre of his company, and four paces in rear of the line of file closers : the covering sergeant will retire to that line, and place himself opposite to his interval.

This rule is general, for both the captain and covering sergeant, in all the different firings.

At the second command, the captain will add ; 1. *Company* ; 2. *READY* ; 3. *AIM* ; 4. *FIRE* ; 5. *LOAD*.

At the command *load*, the men will load their pieces, and then take the position of ready, as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

The captain will immediately recommence the firing by the commands :

1. *Company.* 2. *AIM.* 3. *FIRE.* 4. *LOAD.*

The firing will be thus continued until the signal to cease firing is sounded.

The captain will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right or left, simply observing to pronounce *right* (or *left*) *oblique*, before the command *aim*.

ARTICLE THIRD.

The Fire by file.

The instructor wishing to cause the fire by file to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Company.* 3. **READY.** 4. *Commence firing.*

The third and fourth commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

The fire will be commenced by the right file of the company; the next file will take aim at the instant the first brings down pieces to re-load, and so on, to the left; but this progression will only be observed in the first discharge, after which each man will re-load and fire without regulating himself by others, conforming himself to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

The Fire by rank.

The instructor wishing the fire by rank to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. **READY.** 4. *Rear Rank*
—**AIM.** 5. **FIRE.** 6. **LOAD.**

The fifth and sixth commands will be executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier.

When the instructor sees one or two pieces in the rear rank at a ready, he will command:

1. *Front rank.* 2. **AIM.** 3. **FIRE.** 4. **LOAD.**

The firing will be continued thus by alternate ranks until the signal is given to cease firing.

The instructor will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left.

The instructor will cause the firing to cease, whether by company, by file, or by rank, by sounding the signal to *cease firing*, and at the instant this sound commences, the men will cease firing as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

To Fire by the rear rank.

The instructor will cause the several fires to be executed to the rear, that is, by the rear rank. To effect this, he will command :

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. *About—FACE.*

At the first command, the captain will step out and place himself near to, and facing the right file of his company; the covering sergeant and file closers, will pass quickly through the captain's interval, and place themselves faced to the rear, the covering sergeant a pace behind the captain, and the file closers two paces from the front rank opposite to their places in line, each passing behind the covering sergeant.

At the third command, which will be given at the instant the last file closer shall have passed through the interval, the company will face about; the captain will place himself in his interval in the rear rank, now become the front, and the covering sergeant will cover him in the front rank, now become the rear.

The company having faced by the rear rank, the instructor will cause it to execute the fire by company, both direct and oblique, the fire by file, and the fire by rank, by the commands and means prescribed in the three preceding articles; the captain, covering sergeant, and the men will conform themselves, in like manner, to what is therein prescribed.

The fire by file will commence on the left of the company, now become the right. In the fire by rank, the fire will commence with the front rank, now become the rear.

To resume the proper front, the instructor will command :

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. *About—FACE.*

In executing which the captain, covering sergeant, and file closers, will conform to what is prescribed for facing by the rear rank.

LESSON III.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To advance in line of battle.

The company being in line of battle, and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to exercise it in marching by the front, he will assure himself that the shoulders of the captain and covering sergeant are perfectly in the direction of their respective ranks, and that the sergeant accurately covers the captain; the instructor will then place himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front of them, face to the rear, and place himself exactly on the prolongation of the line passing between their heels.

The instructor, being aligned on the directing file, will command:

1. Company, forward.

At this, a sergeant, previously designated, will move six paces in advance of the captain; the instructor, from the position prescribed, will correctly align this sergeant on the prolongation of the directing line.

This advanced sergeant, who is to be charged with the direction, will, the moment his position is assured, take two points on the ground in the straight line which would pass between his own and the heels of the instructor.

These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside, and command:

2. MARCH.

At this, the company will step off with life. The directing sergeant will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen; he will take in succession, and always a little before arriving at the point nearest to him, new points in advance, exactly in the same line with the first two, and at the distance of some fifteen or twenty paces from each other. The captain will march steadily in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him; the men will

each maintain the head direct to the front, feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor on the side of direction, and conform himself to the principles prescribed, in the school of the soldier, for the march by the front.

The man next to the captain, will take special care not to pass him; to this end, he will keep the line of his shoulders a little in the rear, but in the same direction with those of the captain.

The file closers will march at the habitual distance of two paces behind the rear rank.

If the men lose the step, the instructor will command :

To the—STEP.

At this command, the men will glance towards the directing sergeant, retake the step from him, and again direct their eyes to the front.

The instructor will cause the captain and covering sergeant to be posted sometimes on the right, and sometimes on the left of the company.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To halt the company marching in line of battle and to align it.

The instructor, wishing to halt the company, will command :

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

At the second command, the company will halt; the directing sergeant will remain in advance, unless ordered to return to the line of file closers.

Oblique march in line of battle.

The company being in the direct march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march obliquely, he will command :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the company will take the oblique step. The men will accurately observe the principles

prescribed in the school of the soldier. The rear rank men will preserve their distances, and march in rear of the man next on the right (or left) of their habitual file leaders.

When the instructor wishes the direct march to be resumed, he will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the company will resume the direct march. The instructor will move briskly twenty paces in front of the captain, and facing the company, will place himself exactly in the prolongation of the captain and covering sergeant; and then, by a sign, will move the directing sergeant on the same line, if he be not already on it; the latter will immediately take two points on the ground between himself and the instructor, and as he advances will take new points of direction.

In the oblique march, the men not having the touch of elbows, the guide will always be on the side towards which the oblique is made, without any indication to that effect being given; and when the direct march is resumed, the guide will be, equally without indication, on the side where it was previous to the oblique.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To march in retreat.

The company being halted and correctly aligned; to march in retreat, the instructor will command :

1. *Company.* 2. *About—FACE.*

The company having faced to the rear, the instructor will place himself in front of the directing file, and being correctly established, will command :

3. *Company, forward.*

At this, the directing sergeant will place himself six paces in front of the line of file closers, now leading.

The covering sergeant will step into the line of file

closers, opposite to his interval, and the captain will place himself in the rear rank, now become the front.

This disposition being promptly made, the instructor will command :

4. MARCH.

The instructor will cause to be executed, marching in retreat, all that is prescribed for marching in advance; the commands and the means of execution will be the same.

The instructor, having halted the company, will, when he may wish, cause it to face to the front. The captain, the covering sergeant, and the directing sergeant, will resume their habitual places in line, the moment they shall have faced about.

The company being in march by the front rank, if the instructor should wish it to march in retreat, he will cause the right about to be executed while marching, and to this effect will command :

1. *Company.* 2. *Right about.* 3. MARCH.

At the third command, the company will promptly face about, and recommence the march by the rear rank.

The directing sergeant will face about with the company, and will move rapidly six paces in front of the file closers, and upon the prolongation of the guide. The instructor will place him in the proper direction by the means prescribed. The captain, the covering sergeant, and the men, will conform to the principles prescribed for the march in retreat.

When the instructor wishes the company to march by the front rank, he will give the same commands, and will regulate the direction of the march by the same means.

LESSON IV.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To march by the flank. (Figure 23.)

The company being in line of battle, and at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the right flank, he will command :

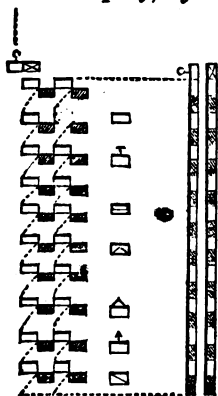
1. *Company, right—FACE.* 2. *Forward.* 3. *MARCH.*

Fig. 23 To march by flank doubling the files.

At the first command, the company will face to the right, the covering sergeant will place himself at the head of the front rank, the captain having stepped out for the purpose, so far as to find himself by the side of the sergeant, and on his left; the front rank will double as is prescribed in the school of the soldier; the rear rank will, at the same time, side step to the right one pace, and double in the same manner; so that when the movement is completed, the files will be formed of four men aligned, and elbow to elbow. The intervals will be preserved.

The file closers will also move by side step to the right, so that when the ranks are formed, they will be two paces from the rearmost rank.

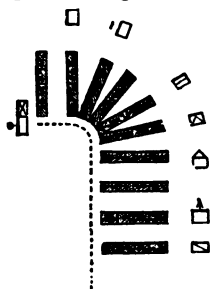
At the command *march*, the company will move off briskly in quick time; the covering sergeant at the head of the front rank, and the captain on his left, will march straight forward. The men of each file will march abreast of their respective front rank men, heads direct to the front; the file closers will march opposite their places in line of battle.

The instructor will cause the principles of the march by the flank to be observed, in placing himself, pending the march, as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

The instructor will cause the march by the left flank to be executed by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*; the ranks will double as has been prescribed in the school for the soldier; the rear rank will side step to the left one pace before doubling.

At the instant the company faces to the left, the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the

captain will pass rapidly to the left, and place himself by the right side of this guide; the covering sergeant will replace the captain in the front rank, the moment the latter quits it to go to the left.



ARTICLE SECOND.

To change direction by file. (Fig. 24.)

The company being faced by the flank, and either in march, or at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to wheel by file, he will command :

1. *By file, left (or right).* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the first file will wheel; if to the side of the front rank man, the latter will take care not to turn at once, but to describe a short arc of a circle, shortening a little the first five or six steps in order to give time to the fourth man of this file to conform himself to the movement. If the wheel be to the side of the rear rank, the front rank man will wheel in the step of twenty-eight inches, and the fourth man will conform himself to the movement by describing a short arc of a circle as has been explained. Each file will come to wheel on the same ground where that which preceded it wheeled.

The instructor will see that the wheel be executed according to these principles, in order that the distance between the files may always be preserved, and that there be no check or hindrance at the wheeling point.

To halt the company marching by the flank, and to face it to the front.

To effect these objects, the instructor will command :

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

The second and third commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier. As soon as the files have undoubled, the rear rank will close to its proper distance.

the step so that the odd number may precede him on the line, the odd number placing himself by the side and on the left of the captain; the even number will afterwards oblique to the left, and place himself on the left of the odd number; the next two men of the front rank doubled, will pass in the same manner behind the first two, turn then to the right, and place themselves, according to the means just explained, to the left, and by the side of, the two men already established on the line; the remaining files of this rank will follow in succession, and be formed to the left in the same manner. The rear rank doubled will execute the movement in the manner already explained for the front rank, taking care not to commence the movement until four men of the front rank are established on the line of battle; the rear rank men, as they arrive on the line, will cover accurately their file leaders.

If the company be marching by the left flank, the instructor will cause it to form by file on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for *right*. In this case the odd numbers will shorten the step so that the even numbers may precede them on the line. The captain, placed on the left of the front rank, and the left guide, will return to their places in the line of battle, by order of the instructor, after the company shall be formed and aligned.

To enable the men the better to comprehend the mechanism of the movement, the instructor will first cause it to be executed separately by each rank doubled, and afterwards by the two ranks united and doubled.

The instructor will place himself on the line of battle, and without the point where the right or left is to rest, in order to establish the base of the alignment.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

The company being in march by the flank, to form it by company, or by platoon, into line.

The company being in march by the right flank, the in-

structor will order the captain to form it into line, the captain will immediately command:

1. *By company into line.* 2. MARCH. (Fig. 26)

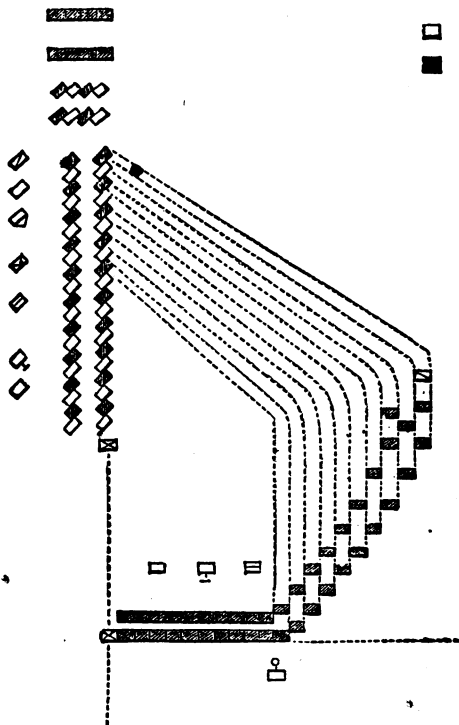


Fig. 26. By company into line.

At the command *march*, the covering sergeant will continue to march straight forward; the men will advance the right shoulder, take the double quick step, and move into line, by the shortest route, taking care to undouble the files, and to come on the line one after the other.

As the front rank men successively arrive in line with the covering sergeant, they will take from him the step, and then turn their eyes to the front.

The men of the rear rank will conform to the movements of their respective file leaders, but without endeavoring to arrive in line at the same time with the latter.

At the instant the movement begins, the captain will face to his company in order to follow up the execution; and, as soon as the company is formed, he will command, *guide left*, place himself two paces before the centre, face to the front, and take the step of the company.

At the command *guide left*, the second sergeant will promptly place himself in the front rank, on the left, to serve as guide, and the covering sergeant who is on the opposite flank will remain there.

When the company marches by the left flank, this movement will be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles; the company being formed, the captain will command *guide right*, and place himself in front of his company as above; the covering sergeant who is on the right of the front rank will serve as guide, and the second sergeant placed on the left flank will remain there.

Thus, in a column by company, right or left in front, the covering sergeant and the second sergeant of each company will always be placed on the right and left, respectively, of the front rank; they will be denominated *right guide* and *left guide*, and the one or the other charged with the direction.

The company being in march by the flank, if it be the wish of the instructor to cause it to form platoons, he will give an order to that effect to the captain, who will command:

1. *By platoon, into line.* 2. MARCH.

The movement will be executed by each platoon according to the above principles. The captain will place himself before the centre of the first platoon, and the first lieutenant before the centre of the second, passing through the opening made in the centre of the company, if the march be by the

right flank, and around the left of his platoon, if the march be by the left: in this last case, the captain will also pass around the left of the second platoon in order to place himself in front of the first. Both the captain and the lieutenant, without waiting for each other, will command *guide left* (or *right*) at the instant their respective platoons are formed.

At the command *guide left* (or *right*), the guide of each platoon will pass rapidly to the indicated flank of the platoon, if not already there.

The right guide of the company will always serve as the guide of the right or left of the first platoon, and the left guide of the company will serve as the guide of the second platoon.

LESSON V.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To break into column by platoon, either at a halt or in march

The company being at a halt, in line of battle, the instructor, wishing to break it into column, by platoon to the right, will command:

1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will rapidly place themselves two paces before the centres of their respective platoons, the lieutenant passing around the left of the company. They need not occupy themselves with dressing, one upon the other. The covering sergeant will replace the captain in the front rank.

At the command *march*, the right front rank man of each platoon will face to the right, the covering sergeant standing fast; the chief of each platoon will move quickly by the shortest line, a little beyond the point at which the marching flank will rest when the wheel shall be completed, face to the late rear, and place himself so that the line which he forms with the man on the right (who had faced), shall be perpendicular to that occupied by the company in line of battle; each platoon will wheel according to the principles

prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot, and when the man who conducts the marching flank shall approach near the perpendicular, its chief will command :

1. *Platoon.* 2. **HALT.**

At the command *halt*, which will be given the instant the man, who conducts the marching flank, shall have arrived at three paces of the perpendicular, the platoon will halt, the covering sergeant will move to the point where the left of the first platoon is to rest, passing by the front rank; the second sergeant will place himself, in like manner, in respect to the second platoon. Each will take care to leave between himself and the man on the right of his platoon, a space equal to its front; the captain and first lieutenant will look to this, and each take care to align the sergeant between himself and the man of the platoon who had faced to the right.

The guide of each platoon, being thus established on the perpendicular, each chief will place himself two paces outside of his guide, and facing towards him, will command :

3. *Left—Dress.*

The alignment being ended, each chief of platoon will command, **FRONT**, and place himself two paces before its centre.

The file closers will conform themselves to the movement of their respective platoons, preserving always the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

The company will break by platoon to the left, according to the same principles.

The instructor wishing to break the company by platoon to the right and to move the column forward after the wheel is completed, will caution the company to that effect, and command :

1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. **MARCH.**

At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will move rapidly in front of their respective platoons, conforming to

what has been prescribed, and will remain in this position during the continuance of the wheel. The covering sergeant will replace the chief of the first platoon in the front rank.

At the command *march*, the platoons will wheel to the right, conforming to the principles herein prescribed; the man on the pivot will not face to the right, but will mark time, conforming himself to the movement of the marching flank; and when the man who is on the left of this flank shall arrive near the perpendicular, the instructor will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide left.*

At the fourth command, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the platoons will move straight to the front, all the men taking the step of twenty-eight inches. The covering sergeant and the second sergeant will move rapidly to the left of their respective platoons, the former passing before the front rank. The leading guide will immediately take points on the ground in the direction which may be indicated to him by the instructor.

At the fifth command, the men will take the touch or elbows lightly to the left.

If the company be marching in line to the front, the instructor will cause it to break by platoon to the right by the same command. At the command *march*, the platoons will wheel in the manner already explained; the man on the pivot will take care to mark time in his place, without advancing or receding; the instructor, the chiefs of platoon, and the guides, will conform to what has been prescribed.

The company may be broken by platoons to the left, according to the same principles.

ARTICLE SECOND

To march in column.

The company having broken by platoon, right (or left) in front, the instructor, wishing to cause the column to march, will throw himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front, face

to the guides, place himself correctly, on their direction, and caution the leading guide to take points on the ground.

These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside, and command :

1. *Column, forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right).* 3. **MARCH.**

At the command *march*, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, they, as well as the guides, will lead off, by a decided step, their respective platoons, in order that the whole may move smartly, and at the same moment.

The men will each feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor towards the guide, and conform himself, in marching, to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier. The man next to the guide, in each platoon, will take care never to pass him, and also to march always about six inches to the right (or left) from him, in order not to push him out of the direction.

The leading guide will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, and maintain the direction of his march by the means prescribed.

The following guide will march exactly in the trace of the leading one, preserving between the latter and himself a distance precisely equal to the front of his platoon, and march in the same step with the leading guide.

If the following guide lose his distance, from the one leading, (which can only happen by his own fault,) he will correct himself by slightly lengthening or shortening a few steps, in order that there may not be sudden quickenings or slackenings in the march of his platoon.

If the same guide, having neglected to march exactly in the trace of the preceding one, find himself sensibly out of the direction, he will remedy this fault by advancing more or less the shoulder opposite to the true direction, and thus, in a few steps, insensibly regain it, without the inconvenience of the oblique step, which would cause a loss of distance. In all cases, each chief of platoon will cause it to conform to the movements of its guide.

ARTICLE THIRD.

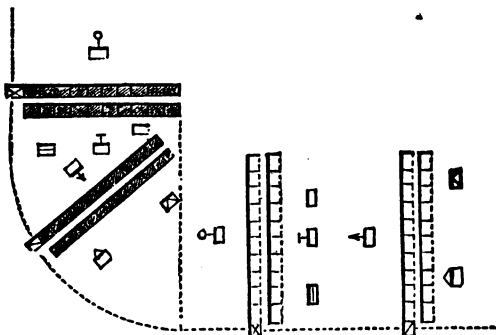
To change direction. (Figure 27.)

Fig. 27. To change direction by wheeling to the right.

The changes of direction of a column while marching, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for wheeling on the march. Whenever, therefore, a column is to change direction, the instructor will change the guide, if not already there, to the flank opposite the side to which the change is to be made.

The column being in march right in front, if it be the wish of the instructor to change direction to the right, he will give the order to the chief of the first platoon, and immediately go himself, or send a marker to the point at which the change of direction is to be made; the instructor, or marker, will place himself on the direction of the guides, so as to present the breast to that flank of the column.

The leading guide will direct his march on that person, so that, in passing, his left arm may just graze his breast. When the leading guide shall have approached near to the marker, the chief of his platoon will command :

1. *Right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

The first command will be given when the platoon is at the distance of four paces from the marker.

At the command *march*, which will be pronounced at the instant the guide shall have arrived opposite the marker, the platoon will wheel to the right, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier.

The wheel being finished, the chief of each platoon will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH.

These commands will be pronounced and executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier. The guide of the first platoon will take points on the ground in the new direction, in order the better to regulate the march.

The second platoon will continue to march straight forward till up with the marker, when it will wheel to the right, and re-take the direct march by the same commands and the same means which governed the first platoon.

The column being in march right in front, if the instructor should wish to change direction to the left, he will command *guide right*. At this command, the two guides will move rapidly to the right of their respective platoons, each passing in front of his subdivision; the men will take the touch of elbows to the right; the instructor will afterwards conform to what is prescribed.

The change of direction to the left will then be executed according to the same principles as the change of direction to the right, but by inverse means.

When the change of direction is completed, the instructor will command, *guide left*.

The changes of direction in a column, left in front, will be executed according to the same principles.

In changes of direction in double quick time, the platoons will wheel according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier.

In order to prepare the men for those formations in line, which can be executed only by turning to the right or the left, the instructor will sometimes cause the column to change direction to the side of the guide. In this case, the chief of the leading platoon will command: *Left (or right) turn*, instead of *left (or right) wheel*. The subdivisions will

each turn, in succession, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier. The leading guide, as soon as he has turned, will take points on the ground, the better to regulate the direction of the march.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

To halt the column.

The column being in march, when the instructor shall wish to halt it, he will command :

1. Column. 2. HALT,

At the second command, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the column will halt; the guides also will stand fast, although they may have lost both distance and direction.

If the command *halt*, be not repeated with the greatest vivacity, and executed at the same instant, distances will be lost.

If a guide, having lost his distance, seeks to recover it after that command, he will only throw his fault on the following guide, who, if he has marched well, will no longer be at his proper distance; and if the latter regains what he has thus lost, the movement will be propagated to the rear of the column.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

Being in column by platoon, to form to the right or left into line of battle. (Fig. 28).

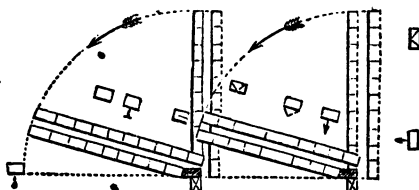


Fig. 23. Left into line wheel.

The instructor having halted the column, right in front

and wishing to form it into line of battle will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond ; which being executed, he will command :

Left—DRESS.

At this command, which will not be repeated by the chiefs of platoon, each of them will place himself briskly two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment of the platoon perpendicularly to the direction of the column.

Each chief having aligned his platoon, will command **FRONT**, and return quickly to his place in column.

The disposition being made, the instructor will command:

1. *Left into line wheel.* 2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the front rank man on the left of each platoon will face to the left, and place his breast lightly against the arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast ; the platoons will wheel to the left on the principle of wheels from a halt, and in conformity to what is prescribed. Each chief will turn to his platoon to observe its movement, and when the marching flank has approached near the line of the battle, he will command :

1. *Platoon.* 2. **HALT.**

The command *halt*, will be given when the marching flank of the platoon is three paces of the line of battle.

The chief of the second platoon, having halted it, will return to his place as a file closer, passing around to the left of his subdivision.

The captain having halted the first platoon, will move rapidly to the point at which the right of the company will rest in line of battle, and command :

Right—DRESS.

At this command, the two platoons will dress up on the

alignment; the front rank man on the right of the leading platoon, who finds himself opposite the instructor established on the direction of the guides, will place his breast lightly against the left arm of this officer. The captain will direct the alignment from the right on the man on the opposite flank of the company.

The company being aligned, the captain will command:

FRONT.

The instructor seeing the company in line of battle, will command:

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the covering sergeant will cover the captain, and the left guide will return to his place as a file closer.

If the column be left in front, and the instructor should wish to form it to the right into line, he will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond; which being executed, he will command:

1. *Right into line wheel.* 2. MARCH.

Which will be executed in the manner prescribed above, but inversely.

LESSON VI.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To break the company into platoons, and to re-form the company.

To break the company into platoons. (Fig. 29.)

The company marching in the cadenced step, and supposed to make part of a column, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to break by platoon, he will give the order to the captain, who will command: 1. *Break into platoons*, and immediately place himself before the centre of the first platoon.

At the command *break into platoons*, the first lieutenant

will pass quickly around the left to the centre of his platoon, and give the caution; *Mark time*.

The captain will then command: 2. *March*.

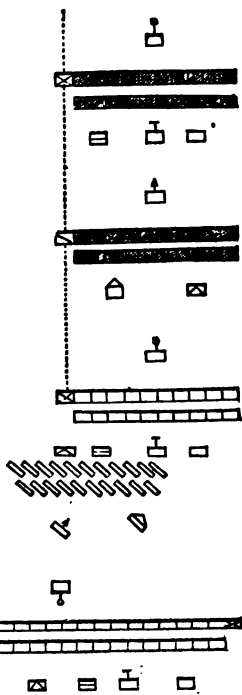
The first platoon will continue to march straight forward; the covering sergeant will move rapidly to the left flank of this platoon (passing by the front rank) as soon as the flank shall be disengaged.

At the command *march*, given by the captain, the second platoon will begin to mark time; its chief will immediately add: 1. *Right oblique*; 2. *MARCH*. The last command will be given so that this platoon may commence obliquing the instant the rear rank of the first platoon shall have passed. The men will shorten the step in obliquing, so that when the command *forward march* is given, the platoon may have its exact distance.

The guide of the second platoon being near the direction of Fig. 29. To break the company into platoons the guide of the first, the chief of the second will command *Forward*, and add *MARCH*, the instant that the guide of his platoon shall cover the guide of the first.

In a column, left in front, the company will break into platoons by inverse means, applying to the first platoon all that has been prescribed for the second, and reciprocally.

In this case, the left guide of the company will shift to the right flank of the second platoon, and the covering sergeant will remain on the right of the first



To re-form the company.

The column, by platoon, being in march, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to form company, he will give the order to the captain, who will command: *Form company.*

Having given this command, the captain will immediately add: 1. *First platoon*; 2. *Right oblique.*

The chief of the second platoon will caution it to continue to march straight forward.

The captain will then command: 3. **MARCH.**

At this command, repeated by the chief of the second, the first platoon will oblique to the right, in order to unmask the second; the covering sergeant, on the left of the first platoon, will return to the right of the company, passing by the front rank.

When the first platoon shall have nearly unmasked the second, the captain will command: 1. *Mark time*, and at the instant the unmasking shall be complete, he will add: 2. **MARCH.** The first platoon will then cease to oblique, and mark time.

In the mean time the second platoon will have continued to march straight forward, and when it shall be nearly up with the first, the captain will command *Forward*, and at the instant the two platoons shall unite, add **MARCH**; the first platoon will then cease to mark time.

In a column, left in front, the same movements will be executed by inverse means, the chief of the second platoon giving the command *Forward*, and the captain adding the command **MARCH**, when the platoons are united.

The guide of the second platoon, on its right, will pass to its left flank the moment the platoon begins to oblique; the guide of the first, on its right, remaining on that flank of the platoon.

The instructor will also sometimes cause the company to break and re-form, by platoon, by his own direct commands. In this case he will give the general commands prescribed for the captain above: 1. *Break into platoons*; 2. **MARCH**; and 1. *Form company*; 2. **MARCH.**

ARTICLE SECOND.

Being in column to break files to the rear, and to cause them to re-enter into line. (Fig. 30.)

The company being in march, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, right (or left) in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause files to break off, he will give

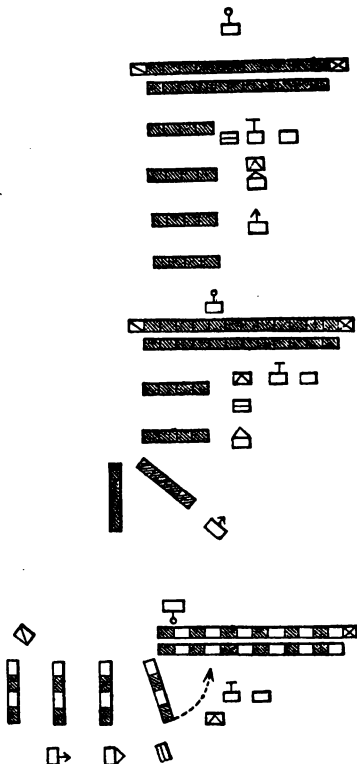


Fig. 30.—To Break Files to the Rear.

the order to the captain, who will immediately turn to his company, and command :

1. *Two files from left (or right) to rear.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *march*, the designated number of files on the left (or right) of the company will at once face to the right (or left), as ordered, and double, the remainder of the company continuing to march to the front. This will bring the files broken off into the position of *march by flank*. If they be broken from the left the men will at once file to the left, so as to make the odd numbers of the broken files cover the first and third from that flank of the company, and the even numbers cover the second and fourth files. Should the files be broken from the right, the men will file to the right, immediately after doubling, so that when in position behind the company, the even numbers will cover the first and third, and the odd numbers the second and fourth files from the right flank of the company. Care must be taken that the men file the instant they double, otherwise they will lose distance.

If the instructor should still wish to break two files from the same side, he will give the order to the captain, who will proceed as above directed.

At the command *march*, given by the captain, the files already broken, advancing a little the outer shoulder, will gain the space of two files to the right, if the files are broken from the left, and to the left, if the files are broken from the right, shortening, at the same time, the step, in order to make room between themselves and the rear rank of the company for the files last ordered to the rear; the latter will break by the same commands and in the same manner as the first. The men who double should increase the length of the step in order to prevent distances from being lost.

The instructor may thus diminish the front of a company by breaking off successive groups of two files, but the new files must always be broken from the same side.

The instructor, wishing to cause files broken off to return into line, will give the order to the captain, who will command :

1. *Two files into line.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the first two files marching by flank will return into line; the others will gain the space of two files toward the flank to which they belong.

Any number of files may be ordered from either flank to rear, the proper number being specified in the command; and they may be brought back into line in groups of as many as the instructor may designate.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To march the column in route, and to execute the movements incident thereto.

The swiftness of the route step will be one hundred and ten steps in a minute; this swiftness will be habitually maintained in columns in route, when the roads and ground may permit.

The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march in the route step, he will command :

1. *Column, forward.* 2. *Guide, left (or right).* 3. *Route step.* 4. MARCH.

At the command *march*, repeated by the captain, the two ranks will step off together; the rear rank will take, in marching, by shortening a few steps, a distance of one pace (twenty-eight inches) from the rank preceding, which distance will be computed from the breasts of the men in the rear rank to the knapsacks of the men in the front rank. The men, without further command, will immediately carry their arms *at will*. They will no longer be required to march in the cadenced pace, or with the same foot, or to remain silent.

The company marching in the route step, to cause it to pass to the cadenced step, the instructor will first order pieces to be brought to the right shoulder, and then command :

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the men will resume the cadenced step, and will close so as to leave a distance of sixteen inches between each rank.

The company marching in the cadenced pace, the instructor, to cause it to take the route step, will command :

1. *Route step.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the front rank will continue the step of twenty-eight inches, the rear rank will take, by gradually shortening the step, the distance of twenty-eight inches from the front rank.

If the company be marching in the route step, and the instructor should suppose the necessity of marching by the flank in the same direction, he will command :

1. *Company by the right (or left) flank.* 2. *By file left (or right.)* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the company will face to the right (or left) in marching, the captain will place himself by the side of the guide who conducts the leading flank : this guide will wheel immediately to the left or right ; all the files will come in succession to wheel on the same spot as the guide ; if there be files broken off to the rear, they will, by wheeling, regain their respective places, and follow the movement of the company.

The instructor having caused the company to be again formed into line, will exercise it in increasing and diminishing front, by platoon, which will be executed by the same commands, and the same means, as if the company were marching in the cadenced step. When the company breaks into platoons, the chief of each will move to the flank of his platoon, and will take the place of the guide, who will step back into the rear rank.

The company being in column, by platoon, and supposed to march in the route step, the instructor can cause the front to be diminished and increased, by section, if the platoons have a front of twelve files or more.

The movements of diminishing and increasing front, by section, will be executed according to the principles indicated for the same movements by platoon. The right sections of platoons will be commanded by the captain and first lieutenant respectively; the left sections, by the two next subalterns in rank, or, in their absence, by sergeants.

The instructor wishing to diminish by section, will give the order to the captain, who will command:

1. *Break into sections.* 2. MARCH.

As soon as the platoons shall be broken, each chief of section will place himself on its directing flank on the front rank, the guides, who will be thus displaced, will fall back into the rear rank; the file closers will close up to within one pace of this rank.

Platoons will be broken into sections only in the column in route, the movement will never be executed in the manoeuvres, whatever may be the front of the company.

When the instructor shall wish to re-form platoons, he will give the order to the captain, who will command:

1. *Form platoons.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, each chief of section will place himself before its centre, and the guides will pass into the front rank. At the command *march*, the movement will be executed as has been prescribed for forming company. The moment the platoons are formed, the chiefs of the left sections will return to their places as file closers.

The instructor will also cause to be executed the diminishing and increasing front by files, as prescribed in the preceding article, and in the same manner, as if marching in the cadenced step. When the company is broken into sections, the subdivisions must not be reduced into a front of less than six files, not counting the chief of the section.

The company being broken by platoon, or by section, the instructor will cause it, marching in the route step, to march by the flank in the same direction, by the commands before indicated. The moment the subdivisions shall face to the right (or left), the first file of each will wheel to the left (or right), in marching, to prolong the direction, and to unite with the subdivision of the rear file immediately preceding. The file closers will take their habitual places in the march by the flank, before the union of the subdivisions.

If the company be marching by the right flank, and the instructor should wish to undouble the files, which might sometimes be found necessary, he will inform the captain, who, after causing the cadenced step to be resumed, and arms to be shouldered or supported, will command :

1. *In two ranks, undouble files.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, the odd numbers will continue to march straight forward, the even numbers will shorten the step, and obliquing to the left, will place themselves promptly behind the odd numbers : the rear rank will gain a step to the left so as to retake the touch of elbows on the side of the front rank.

If the company be marching by the left flank, it will be the even numbers who will continue to march forward, and the odd numbers who will undouble.

If it be found necessary, from the narrowness of the way or other cause, to reduce front still further, the captain, on an intimation from the instructor, will command :

1. *In one rank, undouble files.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the right or left guide, with the leading front rank man, will continue the march, the rear rank man stepping in rear of his file leader as soon as he is able to pass ; the other files marking time. The second file, and successively all the other files, will step off as soon as sufficient distance is gained, the front rank man of each following immediately the rear rank man of the file

next in front of him, and each rear rank man taking his place as above indicated.

If the instructor wishes to double files, he will so indicate to the captain, who will command :

1. *In two ranks, double files.* 2. MARCH

At the command *march*, the rear rank men will take a side step to the right (or left), and each rank will close up on its leading file.

If the instructor should wish again to double the files, he will give the order to the captain, who will command :

1. *In four ranks, double files.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the files will double in the manner as explained, when the company faces by the right or the left flank. The instructor will afterward cause the route step to be resumed.

The various movements prescribed in this lesson may be executed in double quick time. The men will be brought, by degrees, to pass over at this gait about eleven hundred yards in seven minutes.

When the company marching in the route step shall halt, the rear rank will close up at the command *halt*, and the whole will shoulder arms.

Marching in the route step, the men will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner they shall find most convenient, paying attention only to holding the muzzles up, so as to avoid accidents.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

Being in column by platoon, to form on the right (or left) into line of battle. (Fig. 31.)

The column by platoon, right in front, being in march,

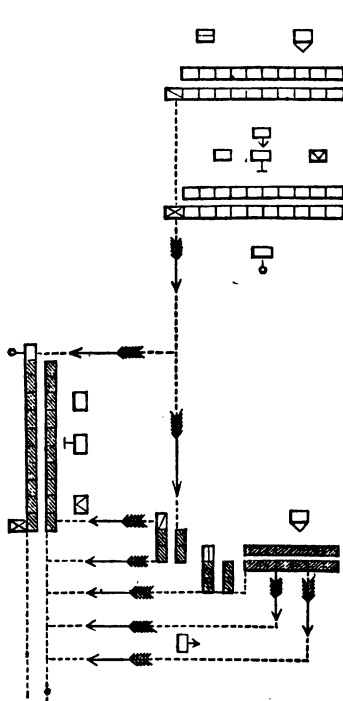


Fig. 81.

the instructor, wishing to form it on the right into line of battle, will command :

1. *On the right into line.*
2. *Guide right.*

At the second command, the guide of each platoon will shift quickly to its right flank, and the men will touch elbows to the right; the column will continue to march straight forward.

The instructor, having given the second command, will move briskly to the point at which the right of the company ought to rest in line, and place himself facing the point of direction to the left which he will choose.

The line of battle ought to be so chosen that the guide of each

platoon, after having turned to the right, may have, at least, ten paces to take before arriving upon that line.

The head of the column being nearly opposite to the instructor, the chief of the first platoon will command : 1. *Right turn*; and when exactly opposite to that point, he will add :

2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the first platoon will turn to the right, in conformity with the principles prescribed in the

School of the Soldier. Its guide will so direct his march as to bring the front rank man, next on his left, opposite to the instructor; the chief of the platoon will march before its centre; and when its guide shall be near the line of battle he will command :

1. *Platoon.* 2. *HALT.*

At the command *halt*, which will be given at the instant the right of the platoon shall arrive at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the platoon will halt; the files, not yet in line, will come up promptly. The guide will place himself on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon; he will face to the instructor, who will align him on the point of direction to the left. The chief of platoon having, at the same time, gone to the point where the right of the company is to rest, will, as soon as he sees all the files of the platoon in line, command :

Right—DRESS.

At this, the first platoon will align itself; the front rank man, who finds himself opposite to the guide, will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of this guide, and the chief of the platoon, from the right, will direct the alignment on this man.

The second platoon will continue to march straight forward, until its guide shall arrive opposite the left file of the first; it will then turn to the right at the command of its chief, and march toward the line of battle, its guide directing himself on the left file of the first platoon.

The guide having arrived at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, this platoon will be halted, as prescribed for the first; at the instant it halts, the guide will spring on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon and will be assured in his position by the instructor.

The chief of the second platoon, seeing all its files in

line, and its guide established on the direction, will command :

Right—DRESS.

Having given this command, he will return to his place as a file closer, passing around the left; the second platoon will dress up on the alignment of the first, and, when established, the captain will command :

FRONT.

The movement ended, the instructor will command :

Guides—POSTS.

At this command, the two guides will return to their places in line of battle.

A column, by platoon, left in front, will form on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles, and, by inverse means, applying to the second platoon what is prescribed for the first, and reciprocally. The chief of the second platoon having aligned it, from the *point d'appui*, (the left), will retire to his place as a file closer. The captain having halted the first platoon three paces behind the line of battle, will go to the same point to align this platoon, and then command :

FRONT.

At the command, *guides—posts*, given by the instructor, the captain will shift to his proper flank, and the guides take their places in the line of battle.

When the companies of a regiment are to be exercised, at the same time, in the school of the company, the colonel will indicate the lesson or lessons they are severally to execute. The whole will commence by a signal, and terminate in like manner :

*Formation of a company from two ranks into single rank,
and reciprocally.*

The company being formed into two ranks, and supposed to make part of a column, right or left in front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into single rank, he will command :

1. In one rank, form company. 2. MARCH.

At the first command the right guide will face to the right.

At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank.

The first file will step off at the same time with the guide; the front rank man will turn to the right at the first step, follow the guide, and be himself followed by the rear rank man of his file, who will come to turn on the same spot where he had turned. The second file, and successively all the other files, will step off as has been prescribed for the first, the front rank man of each file following immediately the rear rank man of the file next on his right. The captain will superintend the movement, and when the last man shall have stepped off, he will halt the company, and face it to the front.

The file closers will take their places in line of battle, two paces in rear of the rank.

The company being in single rank, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command :

**1. In two ranks, form company. 2. Company, right—
FACE. 3. MARCH.**

At the second command the company will face to the right; the right guide and the man on the right will remain faced to the front.

At the command *march*, the men who have faced to the right, will step off, and form files in the following manner :

the second man in the rank will place himself behind the first to form the first file ; the third will place himself by the side of the first in the front rank ; the fourth behind the third in the rear rank ; all the others will, in like manner, place themselves, alternately, in the front and rear rank, and will thus form files of two men, on the left of those already formed.

The formations above described will be habitually executed by the right of companies ; but when the instructor shall wish to have them executed by the left, he will face the company *about*, and post the guides in the rear rank.

The formation will then be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles as by the front rank ; the movement commencing with the left file, now become the right, and in each file by the rear rank man, now become the front ; the left guide will conform to what has been prescribed for the right.

The formation ended, the instructor will face the company to its proper front.

When a battalion in line has to execute either of the formations above described, the colonel will cause it to break to the rear by the right or left of companies, and will then give the commands just prescribed for the instructor. Each company will execute the movement as if acting singly.

Formation of a company from two ranks into four and reciprocally, at a halt in march.

The company being formed in two ranks at a halt, and supposed to form part of a column right in front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks, he will command :

1. *In four ranks, form company.* 2. *Company left—FACE.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, the left guide will remain faced

to the front, the company will face to the left: the rear rank will gain the distance of one pace from the front rank by a side step to the left and rear, and the men will form into four ranks as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

At the command *march*, the first file of four men will re-face to the front without undoubling. All the other files of four will step off, and closing successively to about five inches of the preceding file, will halt, and immediately face to the front, the men remaining doubled.

The file closers will take their new places in line of battle, at two paces in rear of the fourth rank.

The captain will superintend the movement.

The company being in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *Company right—FACE.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command the left guide will stand fast, the company will face to the right.

At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank. The leading file of four men will step off at the same time, the other files standing fast; the second file will step off when there shall be between it and the first space sufficient to form into two ranks. The following files will execute successively what has been prescribed for the second. As soon as the last file shall have its distance, the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *HALT.* 3. *FRONT.*

At the command *front* the company will face to the front, and the files will undouble.

The company being formed in two ranks, and marching to the front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks, he will command:

1. *In four ranks, form company.* 2. *By the left double files.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick MARCH).*

At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front:

the company will make a half face to the left, the odd numbers placing themselves behind the even numbers. The even numbers of the rear rank will shorten their steps a little, to permit the odd numbers of the front rank to get between them and the even numbers of that rank. The files thus formed of fours, except the left file, will continue to march obliquely, lengthening their steps slightly, so as to keep constantly abreast of the guide; each file will close successively on the file next on its left, and when at the proper distance from that file, will face to the front by a half face to the right, and take the touch of elbows to the left.

The company being in march to the front in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish it to form into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *By the right undouble files.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front; the company will make a half face to the right and march obliquely, lengthening the step a little, in order to keep, as near as possible, abreast of the guide. As soon as the second file from the left shall have gained to the right the interval necessary for the left file to form into two ranks, the second file will face to the front by a half face to the left and march straight forward; the left file will immediately form into two ranks, and take the touch of elbows to the left. Each file will execute successively, what has just been prescribed for the file next to the left, and each file will form into two ranks when the file next on its right has obliqued the required distance and faced to the front.

If the company be supposed to make part of a column, left in front, these different movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, substituting the indication *left* for *right*.

Countermarch.

The company being at a halt (Figure 32), and supposed to constitute part of a column, right in front, when

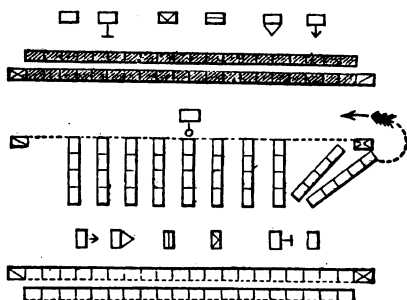


Fig. 32.

the instructor shall wish to cause it to countermarch, he will command :

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Company, right—FACE.* 3. *By file left.* 4. *MARCH.*

At the second command the company will face to the right, the two guides to the right about; the captain will go to the right of his company and cause two files to break to the rear, and then place himself by the side of the front rank man, to conduct him.

At the command *march*, both guides will stand fast; the company will step off smartly; the first file, conducted by the captain, will wheel around the right guide and direct its march along the front rank so as to arrive behind, and two paces from the left guide; each file will come in succession to wheel on the same ground around the right guide; the leading file having arrived at a point opposite to the left guide, the captain will command.

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Right—DRESS.*

The first command will be given at *four* paces from the point where the leading file is to rest.

At the second command the company will halt.

At the third, it will face to the front.

At the fourth, the company will dress by the right; the captain will step two paces outside of the left guide, now on the right, and direct the alignment, so that the front rank may be inclosed between the two guides; the company being aligned, he will command **FRONT**, and place himself before the centre of the company as if in column; the guides, passing along the front rank, will shift to their proper places, on the right and left of that rank.

In a column, left in front, the countermarch will be executed by inverse commands and means, but according to the same principles.

END OF SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

SKIRMISHERS;

OR,

Light-Infantry and Rifle Company Movements.

General Principles and Divisions of the Instructions.

By the general term *skirmishers*, will herein be understood any company or body of infantry, whether denominated *grenadiers*, *light-infantry*, *rifle*, or *battalion companies*, thrown out and actually deployed into open files or loose order.

The term will only be applied to the companies while so extended. The moment that either shall be re-assembled or reformed into closed files, it will take its habitual denomination of *grenadiers*, *light-infantry*, *rifle*, *first company*, &c.

The service of skirmishers will habitually be performed by the left flank companies of battalions (*light-infantry* and *rifle*).

Skirmishers will be thrown out to clear the way for, and to cover the movements of the main corps to which they appertain; accordingly they may be thrown out to the front, to a flank, to the rear, or in the several directions, as may be deemed necessary.

The movements of skirmishers should be subjected to such rules as will give to the commander the means of moving them in any direction with the greatest promptitude.

It is not expected that these movements should be executed with the same precision as in closed ranks, nor is it desirable, as such exactness would materially interfere with their prompt execution.

When skirmishers are thrown out to clear the way for, and to protect the advance of, the main corps, their move-

ments should be so regulated by this corps, as to keep it constantly covered.

Every body of skirmishers should have a reserve, the strength and composition of which will vary according to circumstances.

If the body thrown out be within sustaining distance of the main corps, a very small reserve will be sufficient for each company, whose duty it shall be to fill vacant places, furnish the line with cartridges, relieve the fatigued, and serve as a rallying point for the skirmishers.

If the main corps be at a considerable distance, besides the company reserves, another reserve will be required, composed of entire companies, which will be employed to sustain and reinforce such parts of the line as may be warmly attacked: this reserve should be strong enough to relieve half the companies deployed as skirmishers.

The reserves should be placed behind the centre of the line of skirmishers, the company reserves at one hundred and fifty and the principal reserve at four hundred paces.

This rule, however, will not be invariable; the commander, always holding his reserve within sustaining distance, will next take care to profit by any accident the ground may present (such as trees, houses, fences, hollows), to put it under cover from the fire of the enemy.

The movements of skirmishers will be made in quick time; but in circumstances which demand a greater rapidity, *double quick* time, and even the *run* will be employed.

In this instruction, the *double quick march* will be at the rate of one hundred and forty steps in the minute: the rate of the run cannot be equally determined. This extreme swiftness will be reserved for cases of absolute necessity, in order not uselessly to fatigue the men, and to preserve their strength for circumstances in which success may principally depend on rapidity of movement.

In all the movements, skirmishers (that is men, in open files), will habitually carry their pieces as light-infantry, taking care to avoid accidents.

Whenever the company is put in motion in *double quick* time, or when *double quick* time is to be assumed on the

march, the men will understand that they are to trail arms.

The movements of skirmishers will be executed, as far as possible, by the voice of the commander; but when the line shall be too extended for his voice to be heard, he will substitute the sounds of the bugle or beats of the drum.

Other conventional signs may, for particular cases (as the want of both drum and bugle), be adopted to express the same commands.

The officers, and, if necessary, the non-commissioned officers, will repeat, and cause the commands to be executed, as soon as they are given; but to avoid mistakes, when the signals are employed, they will wait until the last bugle note is sounded before commencing the movement.

In moving rapidly, the men should economize their strength, keep cool, and profit by all cover that the natural advantages of ground may offer. Officers, and non-commissioned officers, will give particular attention to this, as it is only by continual watchfulness on the part of all grades, that a line of skirmishers can attain success.

This instruction will be divided into five articles.

ARTICLE FIRST.

Deployments.

A company may be deployed as skirmishers in two ways: forward, and by the flank.

The deployment forward will be adopted when the company is behind the line on which it is to be established as skirmishers: it will be deployed by the flank, when it finds itself already on that line.

Whenever a company is to be deployed as skirmishers, it will be divided into two platoons, and each platoon will be subdivided into two sections; the comrades in battie, forming groups of four men, will be careful to know and to sustain each other. The captain will assure himself that the files in the centre of each platoon and section are designated.

A company may be deployed as skirmishers on its right,

left, or centre file, or on any other named file **whatsoever**. In this manner, skirmishers may be thrown forward with the greatest possible rapidity on any ground they may be required to occupy.

A chain of skirmishers ought generally to preserve their alignment, but no advantages which the ground may present should be sacrificed to attain this regularity.

The interval between skirmishers depends on the extent of ground to be covered; but in general, it is not proper that the groups of four men should be removed more than forty paces from each other. The habitual distance between men of the same group in open grounds will be five paces; in no case will they lose sight of each other.

The front to be occupied to cover a battalion comprehends its front and the half of each interval which separates it from the battalion on its right and left. If a line, whose wings are not supported, should be covered by skirmishers, it will be necessary either to protect the flanks with skirmishers, or to extend them in front of the line so far beyond the wings as effectually to oppose any attempt which might be made by the enemy's skirmishers to disturb the flanks.

To deploy forward.

A company being at a halt or in march, when the captain shall wish to deploy it forward on the left file of the first platoon, holding the second platoon in reserve, he will command:

1. *First platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *On the left file—take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the second and third lieutenants will place themselves rapidly two paces behind the centres of the right and left sections of the first platoon; the fifth sergeant will move one pace in front of the centre of the first platoon, and will place himself between the two sections, in the front as soon as the movement begins; the fourth sergeant will place himself on the left of the front rank of the same platoon, as soon as he can pass. The captain will

indicate to this sergeant the point on which to direct his march. The first lieutenant, placing himself before the centre of the second platoon, will command :

Second platoon backward—MARCH.

This platoon will be halted at three paces behind the line, when the flank of the first platoon is unmasked. The second and third sergeants will place themselves on the left and right flanks of this platoon.

At the command *march*, the left group of four men, conducted by the fourth sergeant, will direct itself on the point indicated; all the other groups of fours throwing forward briskly the left shoulder, will move diagonally to the front in double quick time, so as to gain to the right the space of twenty paces, which shall be the distance between each group and that immediately on its left. When the second group from the left shall arrive on a line with, and twenty paces from the first, it will march straight to the front, conforming to the gait and direction of the first, keeping constantly on the same alignment and at twenty paces from it. The third group, and all the others, will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second; they will arrive successively on the line. The right guide will arrive with the last group.

The left guide having reached the point where the left of the line should rest, the captain will command the skirmishers to halt; the men composing each group of fours will then immediately deploy at five paces from each other, and to the right and left of the front rank man of the even file in each group, the rear rank men placing themselves on the left of their file leaders. If any groups be not in line at the command *halt*, they will move up rapidly, conforming to what has just been prescribed.

If during the deployment, the line should be fired upon by the enemy, the captain may cause the groups of fours to deploy, as they gain their proper distances.

The line being formed, the non-commissioned officers will throw themselves ten paces behind the right, left and centre of the line.

The second and third lieutenants will promptly rectify any irregularity that may have been committed in taking intervals; they will then throw themselves twenty or thirty paces behind the centres of their respective sections. Each of these officers will have with him four men taken from the reserve before the commencement of the movement.

These dispositions being made, the first lieutenant will march the reserve, by the shortest line, to about one hundred and fifty paces behind the centre of the line of skirmishers, halt, face it to the front, and maintain it steadily at that distance; the reserve will conform itself to all the movements of the line.

The captain will give a general superintendence to the whole deployment, and then throw himself to the distance of about eighty paces from the rear of the line; he will take with him the first bugler, or drummer, and four men from the reserve.

The deployment may be made on the right or the centre of the platoon, by the same commands, substituting the indication *right* or *centre*, for that of *left* file.

The deployment on the right or the centre will be made according to the principles prescribed above; in this latter case, the centre of the platoon will be marked by the right group of fours in the second section; the fifth sergeant will place himself on the right of this group, and serve as the guide of the platoon during the deployment.

In whatever manner the deployment be made, on the right, left, or centre, the men in each group of fours will always deploy at five paces from each other, and upon the front rank man of the even numbered file. The deployments will habitually be made at twenty paces interval; but if a greater interval be required, it will be indicated in the command.

If a company be thrown out as skirmishers, so near the main body as to render a reserve unnecessary, the entire company will be extended in the same manner, and according to the same principles, as for the deployment of a platoon. In this case, the third lieutenant will command the fourth section, and a non-commissioned officer designated

for that purpose, the second section ; the fifth sergeant will act as centre guide ; the file closers will place themselves ten paces in rear of the line, and opposite their places in line of battle. The first and second lieutenant will each have a bugler near him.

Figure 33 shows the manner of executing the deployment forward.

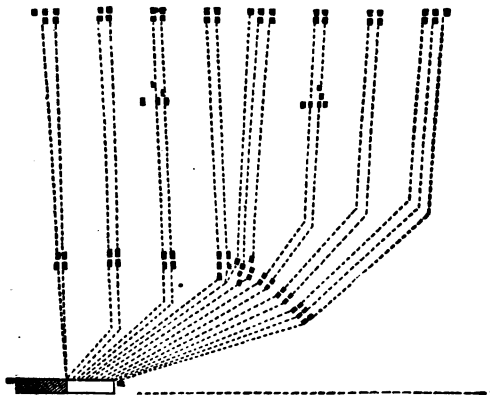


Fig. 33. To deploy forward.

To deploy by the flank.

The company at a halt, to deploy by the flank : the first platoon as the reserve. The captain will command :

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right flank—take intervals.* 3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves, respectively, two paces behind the centres of the first and second sections of the second platoon ; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of this platoon ; and the third sergeant on the right of the front rank as soon as he can pass. The captain will indicate to him the point on which to direct his march.

The chief of the first platoon will cause it to unmask the second platoon by stepping to the rear. The fourth sergeant will place himself on the left flank of the reserve.

At the second command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves two paces behind the left group of their respective sections.

At the command *march*, the second platoon will face to the right, and commence the movement; the left group of fours will stand fast, but will deploy as soon as there is room on its right conforming to what has been prescribed: the third sergeant will place himself on the left of the right group, to conduct it; the second group will halt at twenty paces from the one on its left, the third group at twenty paces from the second, and so, on to the right. As the groups halt, they will face to the enemy, and deploy as has been explained for the left group.

The chiefs of sections will pay particular attention to the successive deployments of the groups, keeping near the group about to halt, so as to rectify any errors which may be committed. When the deployment is completed, they will place themselves thirty paces in rear of the centre of their sections, as has been heretofore prescribed. The non-commissioned officers will also place themselves as previously indicated.

As soon as the movement commences, the chief of the first platoon, causing it to face about, will move it to the rear.

The deployment may be made by the left flank according to the same principles, substituting *left flank* for *right flank*.

Figure 34 shows the deployment by flank.

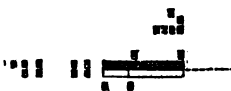


Fig. 34. To deploy by the flank.

If the captain should wish to deploy the company upon the centre of one of the platoons, he will command :

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.*
2. *By the right and left flanks—take intervals.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the officers and non-commissioned

officers will conform to what has been prescribed for deployment by a single flank.

At the second command, the first lieutenant will place himself behind the left group of the right section of the second platoon, the third lieutenant behind the right group of the left section of the same platoon.

At the command march the two sections will face outward, and move off in opposite directions, with the exception of the right group of the second section, which stands fast. The several groups halt at twenty paces from this centre group, and deploy when sufficient interval is obtained. The second and third sergeants respectively, conduct the second and first sections.

The officers will conform themselves to what is prescribed in the preceding cases.

The captain may designate, as the directing file, any interior file other than that on the right of the second platoon; in which case, the deployment will be executed according to the principles which have been just prescribed.

To extend intervals.

If it be supposed that the line of skirmishers is at a halt, and that the captain wishes to extend it to the left, he will command :

1. *By the left flank (so many paces) extend intervals.*
2. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the command *march*, the group on the right will stand fast, all the other groups will face to the left, and each group will extend its interval to the prescribed distance.

The men of the same group will continue to preserve between each other the distance of five paces, unless the nature of the ground should render it necessary that they should close nearer, in order to keep in sight of each other. The intervals refer to the spaces between the groups, and not to the distances between the men in each group. The inter-

vals will be taken from the right or left men of the neighboring group.

If the line of skirmishers be marching to the front, and the captain should wish to extend it to the right, he will command :

1. *On the left group (so many paces) extend intervals.* 2. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to march on the point of direction; the other groups throwing forward the left shoulder, and taking the double quick step, will open their intervals to the prescribed distance, by the means indicated for deploying forward.

If by extending intervals, it is designed that one platoon shall occupy the place, previously occupied by two, the men of the retiring platoon, will fall in the rear as they are relieved by the extension of intervals.

To close intervals.

The line being at a halt the captain will command :

1. *By the left flank (so many paces) close intervals.* 2. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the second command the left group will stand fast; the others facing to the left and closing to the required distance; each group facing to the enemy as it attains its proper interval.

If the line be marching to the front, the captain will command :

1. *On the left group (so many paces) close intervals.* 2. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to move on in the direction previously indicated; the other groups, advancing the right shoulder, will close to the left, until the intervals are reduced to the prescribed distance.

Intervals may be closed on the right, or on the centre, according to the same principles.

When intervals are to be closed up, in order to reinforce a line of skirmishers, so as to cause two companies to cover the ground which had been previously occupied by one, the new company will deploy so as to finish its movement at twenty paces in rear of the line it is to occupy, and the men will successively move upon that line, as they shall be unmasked by the men of the old company. The reserves of the two companies will unite behind the centre of the line.

To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers.

When a company of skirmishers is to be relieved, the captain will be advised of the intention, which he will immediately communicate to his first and second lieutenants.

The new company will execute its deployment forward, so as to finish the movement at about twenty paces in rear of the line.

Arrived at this distance, the men of the new company, by command of their captain, will advance rapidly a few paces beyond the old line and halt; the new line being established, the old company will assemble on its reserve, taking care not to get into groups of fours until they are beyond the fire of the enemy.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To advance.

To advance in line, and to retreat in line.

When skirmishers are marching to the front, the guide is in the centre, unless it be particularly specified otherwise, in which case *guide right* or *left*, will be ordered immediately after the command forward.

The captain will command:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick*--MARCH).

This command will be repeated with great rapidity by the chiefs of sections.

At the first command, three sergeants will move briskly

on the line, the first on the right, the second on the left, and the third in the centre.

At the command *march*, the line will move to the front, the guide charged with the direction will move on the point indicated to him, the skirmishers will hold themselves aligned on this guide, and preserve their intervals towards him.

The chiefs of sections will march immediately behind their sections, so as to direct their movements.

The captain will give a general superintendence to the movement.

When he shall wish to halt the skirmishers, he will command:

HALT.

At this command, briskly repeated, the line will halt. The chiefs of sections will promptly rectify any irregularity in the alignment and intervals, and after taking every possible advantage which the ground may offer for protecting the men, they, with the three sergeants in the line, will retire to their proper places in rear.

The captain, wishing to march the skirmishers in retreat, will command:

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command, the three sergeants will move on the line as prescribed above for advance.

At the command *march*, the skirmishers will individually face about and march to the rear; conforming to the principles of the advance.

To halt skirmishers in retreat, the captain commands

HALT.

At this command the skirmishers halt and face to the front.

The chiefs of sections and the guides conform to what is prescribed for halting when advancing.

To change direction.

To change the direction of a line of skirmishers the captain will command :

1. *Right wheel.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the command *march*, the right guide will mark time in his place; the left guide will move in a circle to the right. The centre guide will also move in a circle to the right; and will take care that his steps are only half the length of those of the left guide.

The skirmishers will regulate the length of their steps by their distance from the marching flank, being less as they approach the pivot, and greater as they are removed from it; they will often look to the marching flank, so as to preserve the direction and their intervals.

When the commander of the line shall wish to resume the direct march, he will command :

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the line will cease to wheel, and the skirmishers will move direct to the front; the centre guide will march on the point which will be indicated to him.

If the captain should wish to halt the line, in place of moving it to the front, he will command :

HALT.

At this command, the line will halt.

A change of direction to the left will be made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

A line of skirmishers marching in retreat, will change direction by the same means, and by the same commands, as a line marching in advance; for example, if the captain should wish to refuse his left, now become the right, he will command: 1. *Left wheel.* 2. MARCH. At the command *halt*, the skirmishers will face to the enemy.

But if, instead of halting the line, the captain should wish to continue to march it in retreat, he will, when he judges the line has wheeled sufficiently, command :

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH.*To march by the flank.*

The captain will command :

1. *By the right flank.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command the three sergeants will place themselves on the line.

At the command *march*, the skirmishers and the reserve will put themselves in march; the right guide will direct himself on the point which will have been indicated to him; each skirmisher will take care to follow in the trace of the one immediately preceding, and to preserve, exactly, his distance.

The line of skirmishers will march by the left flank according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for that of *right* in the first command; the left guide will throw himself to the side of the leading man, to conduct him.

The skirmishers marching by the flank, to cause them to halt, the captain will command :

HALT.

At the command, the skirmishers and the reserve will halt and face to the enemy.

The officers and sergeants will conform themselves to what is prescribed at the command *halt*, marching in advance.

The reserve should execute all the movements of the line, and be held always about one hundred and fifty paces from it, so as to be in position to second its operations.

When the chief of the reserve shall wish to march it in advance, he will command : 1. *Platoon forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH. If he should wish to march it in retreat, he will command : 1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.* At the command *halt*, it will re-face to the enemy.

The men should be made to understand that the signals commands, such as *forward*, mean that the skirmishers

shall march on the enemy; *in retreat* that they shall retire, and to *the right or left flank*, that the men must face to the right or left, whatever may be their position.

If the skirmishers be marching by the flank, and the captain should wish to change direction to the right (or left), he will command: 1. *By file right (or left)*. 2. MARCH.

ARTICLE THIRD.

The firings.

Skirmishers will fire either at a halt or marching.

To fire at a halt.

The captain will command:

Commence—FIRING.

At this command, briskly repeated, the men of the front rank will commence firing; and reload rapidly. During this time the men of the rear rank will come to a ready, and as soon as their respective file leaders have loaded, they will fire and reload. In this manner the firing will continue, one man of each file always having his piece loaded.

To fire marching.

This will be executed in the same manner as at a halt.

At the command, if the line be advancing, the front rank man of every file will halt, fire, and reload before throwing himself forward. The rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and after passing ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man, will halt, come to a ready, select his object, and fire when his front rank man has loaded; the fire will thus continue to be executed by each file; the skirmishers will keep united, and endeavor, as much as possible, to preserve the general direction of the alignment.

If the line be marching in retreat, at the command *commence firing*, the front rank men of every file will halt, face to the enemy, fire, and then reload while moving to the

rear; the rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and halt ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man, face about, come to a ready, and fire, when his front rank man has passed him in retreat and loaded; after which, he will move to the rear and reload; the front rank man in his turn, after marching briskly to the rear, will halt at ten or twelve paces from the rear rank, face to the enemy, and fire, conforming to what has just been prescribed; the firing will thus be continued.

If the company be marching by the right flank at the command, *commence firing*, the front rank man of every file will face to the enemy, step one pace forward, halt, and fire; the rear rank man will continue to move forward. As soon as the front rank man has fired, he will place himself briskly behind his rear rank man reload while marching. When he has loaded, the rear rank man will, in his turn, step one pace forward, halt, and fire, and returning to the ranks, will place himself behind his front rank man; the latter, in his turn, will act in the same manner, observing the same principles. At the command, *cease firing*, the rear rank men will retake their original positions, if not already there.

In marching by the left flank, the rear rank men will fire first.

If while firing at a halt, or when marching by flank, the command *forward*—MARCH, is given; the men whose pieces are loaded will move forward to the front. The others will remain in their places and load before executing the command. The firing will be continued agreeably to the principles prescribed.

If the command, in *retreat*—MARCH, be given, the men whose pieces are loaded will remain faced to the enemy while the others retreat loading.

If the skirmishers be firing at a halt, advancing, or in retreat, at the command to march by flank, the men whose pieces are loaded will step one pace out of the general alignment, face the enemy, and fire in this position; the men whose pieces are unloaded will face to the right (or left) and march in the direction indicated. The men who

stepped out of the ranks will place themselves immediately after firing, upon the general direction, and in rear of their front or rear rank men, as the case may be.

Skirmishers will be habituated to load their pieces while marching; but they will be enjoined to halt always an instant, when in the act of charging cartridge, and priming.

They should be practised to fire and load kneeling, lying down, and sitting, and much liberty should be allowed in these exercises, in order that they may be executed in the manner found to be most convenient. Skirmishers should be cautioned not to forget that, in whatever position they may load, it is important that the piece should be placed upright before ramming, in order that the entire charge of powder may reach the bottom of the bore.

In commencing the fire, the men of the same rank should not all fire at once, and the men of the same file should be particular that one or the other of them be always loaded.

In retreating, the officer commanding the skirmishers should seize on every advantage which the ground may present, for arresting the enemy as long as possible.

At the signal to *cease firing*, the captain will see that the order is promptly obeyed; but the men who may not be loaded, will load. If the line be marching, it will continue the movement; but the man of each file who happens to be in front, will wait until the man in rear shall be abreast with him.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

The Rally.

To form column.

A company deployed as skirmishers, is rallied in order to oppose the enemy with better success; the rallies are made at a run, and with bayonets fixed; when ordered to rally, the skirmishers fix bayonets, without command.

There are several ways of rallying, which the chief of the line will adopt according to circumstances.

If the line, marching or at a halt, be merely disturbed by scattered horsemen, it will not be necessary to fall back on

the reserve, but the captain will cause bayonets to be fixed. If the horsemen should, however, advance to charge the skirmishers, the captain will command, *rally by fours*. The line will halt, if marching, and the four men of each group will execute this rally in the following manner: the front rank man of the even numbered file will take the position of *guard against cavalry*: the rear rank man of the odd numbered file will also take the position of *guard against cavalry*, turning his back to him, his right foot thirteen inches from the right foot of the former, and parallel to it; the front rank man of the odd file, and the rear rank man of the even file, will also place themselves back to back, taking a like position, and between the two men already established, facing to the right and left; the right feet of the four men will be brought together, forming a square, and serving for mutual support. The four men will come to a ready, fire as occasion may offer and load without moving their feet.

If the captain shall judge these squares too weak, he will command:

Rally by sections.

At this command the chiefs of sections, will move rapidly on the centre group of their respective sections; the skirmishers will collect rapidly at a run on this group, and without distinction of numbers. The group on which the formation is made, will form square, and elevate their pieces, the bayonet uppermost, to indicate the point of rally. The other men as they arrive, will occupy and fill the open angular spaces between these four men, and successively rally around this first nucleus in such a manner as to form rapidly a compact circle. The skirmishers will take as they arrive, the position of charge bayonet, the point of the bayonet more elevated, and will cock their pieces in this position. The movement concluded, the two exterior ranks will fire as occasion may offer, and load without moving their feet.

The captain will move rapidly with his guard, wherever he may judge his presence most necessary.

The officers and sergeants will be particular to observe that the rally is made in silence, and with promptitude and order; that some pieces in each of their subdivisions be at all times loaded, and that the fire is directed on those points only where it will be most effective.

If the reserve should be threatened, it will form into a circle around its chief.

If the captain, or commander of a line of skirmishers formed of many platoons, should judge that the rally by section does not offer sufficient resistance, he will cause the rally by platoons to be executed, and for this purpose, will command:

Rally by platoons.

This movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by the same means, as the rally by sections. The chiefs of platoons will conform to what has been prescribed for the chiefs of sections.

The captain wishing to rally the skirmishers on the reserve, will command:

Rally on the reserve.

At this command, the captain will move briskly on the reserve; the officer commanding which will cause the half sections on the flanks to be thrown perpendicularly to the rear; and will bring his men to a ready.

The skirmishers of each section will form into groups, and upon that man of each, who is nearest the centre of the section. These groups will move rapidly to the rear forming sections while moving, which their chiefs will direct upon the reserve; taking care to unmask it to the right and left. As the skirmishers arrive, they will complete the formation of the square begun by the reserve; closing in rapidly without regard to their places in line: they will come to a ready, and fire upon the enemy, without command.

If the section should be closely pressed by cavalry while retreating, its chief will halt it, and the men will form a compact circle around the officer, to repel the attack.

The formation of the square in a prompt and efficient manner, requires coolness and activity on the part of both officers and sergeants.

The captain will also profit by every moment of respite which the enemy's cavalry may leave him; as soon as he can, he will endeavor to place himself beyond the reach of their charges, either by gaining a position where he may defend himself with advantage, or by returning to the corps to which he belongs. For this purpose, being in square, he will cause the company to break into column by platoons at half distance; to this effect, he will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, each platoon will dress on its centre, and the platoon which was facing to the rear will face about without command. The guides will place themselves on the right and left of their respective platoons, those of the second platoon will place themselves at half distance from those of the first, counting from the rear rank. These dispositions being made, the captain can move the column in whatever direction he may judge proper.

If he wishes to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the command *march*, the column will immediately face by the rear rank, and move off in the opposite direction.

As soon as the column is in motion the captain will command: *Guide right* (or *left*).

If again threatened by cavalry, the captain will command:

1. *Form square.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the column will halt; the first platoon will face about briskly, and the outer half sections of each platoon will be thrown perpendicularly to the rear, so as to form the second and third fronts of the square.

To march in advance the captain will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

After the formation of column, the captain will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH). 3. *Guide left (or right).*

At the second command, the column will move forward, and at the third command, the men will take the touch of elbows to the side of the guide.

If the captain should wish the column to gain ground to the right or left, he will do so by rapid wheels to the side opposite the guide, and for this purpose, will change the guide whenever it may be necessary.

If a company be in column by platoon, at half distance, right in front, the captain can deploy the first platoon as skirmishers by the means already explained; but if it should be his wish to deploy the second platoon forward on the centre file, leaving the first platoon in reserve, he will command :

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *On the centre file—take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH)

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon will caution his platoon to stand fast; the chiefs of sections of the second platoon will place themselves before the centre of their sections; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon.

At the second command, the chief of the right section, second platoon, will command : *Section right face*; the chief of the left section : *Section left face*.

At the command *march*, these sections will move off briskly in opposite directions, and having unmasked the first platoon, the chiefs of sections will respectively command : *By the left flank*—MARCH, and, *by the right flank*—MARCH; and as soon as these sections arrive on the alignment of the first platoon, they will command : *As skirmishers*—MARCH. The groups will then deploy on the right group of the left section.

Should the captain wish to rally the skirmishers on the battalion, he will command :

Rally on the battalion.

At this command, the skirmishers and reserve, without regard to the position of the company to which they belong, in line of battle, will rapidly unmask the front of the battalion, directing themselves towards its nearest flank, and form in its rear.

When beyond the line of file closers, the chief of each subdivision will reform it, and place it in column behind the wing on which it is rallied, ten paces from the rank of file closers. These subdivisions will not be moved except by order of the commander of the battalion, who may, if he thinks proper, throw them into line of battle at the extremities of the line, or in the intervals between the battalions.

When the battalion, covered by a company of skirmishers, shall be formed into square, the platoons and sections of the covering company will be directed by their chiefs to the rear of the square, which will be opened at the angles to receive the skirmishers, who will be then formed into close column by platoons in rear of the first front of the square.

The assembly.

A company deployed as skirmishers will be *assembled*, when there is no longer any danger of its being disturbed ; this movement will be made in quick time.

The captain will command :

Assemble on the reserve.

At this command, the men will assemble by groups ; the front rank men will place themselves behind their rear rank men ; and each group of fours thus formed, will direct itself on the reserve, and take its proper place in the ranks. The company, when formed, will rejoin the battalion.

It may be proper to assemble the skirmishers on the

centre, or on the right or left of the line, either marching or at a halt.

If the captain wishes to assemble them on the centre while marching, he will command :

Assemble on the centre.

At this command, the centre guide will continue to march directly to the front on the point indicated; the front rank man of the directing file will follow the guide, and be covered by his rear rank man; the other two comrades of this group, and likewise those on their left, will march diagonally, advancing the left shoulder and accelerating the gait, so as to re-form the groups while drawing nearer and nearer the directing file; the men of the right section will unite in the same manner into groups, and then upon the directing file, throwing forward the right shoulder. As they successively unite on the centre, the men will bring their pieces to the right shoulder.

To assemble on the right or left file will be executed according to the same principles.

The assembly of a line marching in retreat will also be executed according to the same principles, the front rank men marching behind their rear rank men.

To assemble the line of skirmishers at a halt, and on the line they occupy, the captain will give the same commands; the skirmishers will face to the right or left, according as they should march by the right or left flank, re-form the groups while marching, and thus arrive on the file which served as the point of formation. As they successively arrive, the skirmishers will support arms.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

To Deploy a Battalion as Skirmishers, and to Rally this Battalion.

To Deploy the Battalion as Skirmishers. (Fig. 35.)

A battalion being in line of battle, if the commander

should wish to deploy it on the right of the sixth company, holding the three right companies in reserve, he will signify his intention to the lieutenant-colonel and adjutant, and also to the major, who will be directed to take charge of the reserves. He will point out to the lieutenant-colonel

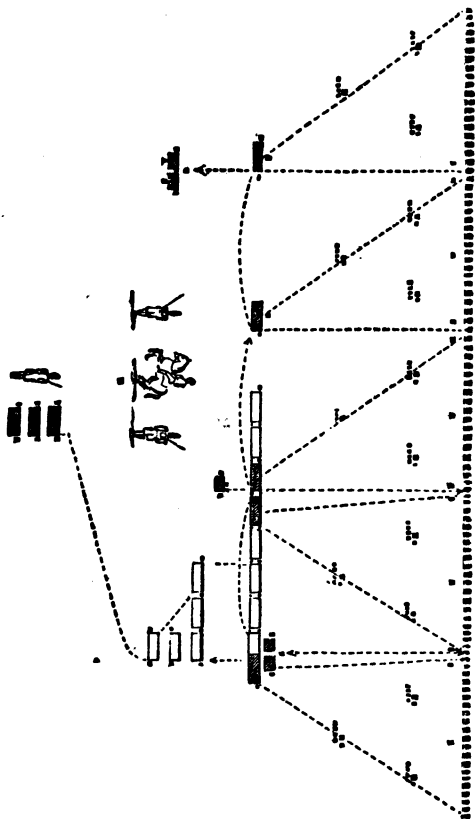


Fig. 85.—A Battalion Deployed as Skirmishers.

the direction he wishes to give the line, as well as the point where he wishes the right of the sixth company to rest, and to the commander of the reserve the place he may wish it established.

The lieutenant-colonel will move rapidly in front of the right of the sixth company, and the adjutant in front of the left of the same company. The commander of the reserve will dispose of it in the manner to be hereinafter indicated.

The colonel will command :

1. *First (or second) platoons—as skirmishers.*
2. *On the right of the sixth company—take intervals.*
3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the second command, the captains of the fifth and sixth companies will prepare to deploy the first platoons of their respective companies, the sixth on its right, the fifth on its left file.

The captain of the fourth company will face it to the right, and the captains of the seventh and eighth companies will face their respective companies to the left.

At the command *march*, the movements will commence. The platoons of the fifth and sixth companies will deploy forward; the right guide of the sixth will march on the point which will be indicated to him by the lieutenant-colonel.

The company which has faced to the right, and also the companies which have faced to the left, will march straight forward. The fourth company will take an interval of one hundred paces counting from the left of the fifth, and its chief will deploy its first platoon on its left file. The seventh and eighth companies will each take an interval of one hundred paces, counting from the first file of the company, which is immediately on its right; and the chiefs of these companies will afterwards deploy their first platoons on the right file.

The guides who conduct the files on which the deployment is made, should be careful to direct themselves

towards the outer man of the neighboring company, already deployed as skirmishers, or if the company has not finished its deployment, they will judge carefully the distance which may still be required to place all these files in line, and will then march on the point thus marked out. The companies, as they arrive on the line, will align themselves on those already deployed.

The lieutenant-colonel and adjutant will follow the deployment, the one on the right, the other on the left; the movement concluded, they will place themselves near the colonel.

The reserves of the companies will be established in echelon in the following manner: the reserve of the sixth company will be placed one hundred and fifty paces in rear of the right of this company; the reserves of the fourth and fifth companies, united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces in advance of the reserve of the sixth company; the reserves of the seventh and eighth companies, also united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces farther to the rear than the reserve of the sixth company.

The major commanding the companies composing the reserve, on receiving an order from the colonel to that effect, will march these companies thirty paces to the rear, and will then deploy them into column by company at half distance; after which, he will conduct the column to the point which shall have been indicated to him.

The colonel will have a general superintendence of the movement; and when it is finished, will move to a point in rear of the line, whence his view may best embrace all the parts, in order to direct their movements.

If, instead of deploying forward, it be desired to deploy by the flank, the sixth and fifth companies will be moved to the front ten or twelve paces, halted, and deployed by the flank, the one on the right, the other on the left file, by the means already indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank; and as soon as the last file of the company, next toward the direction, shall have taken its interval, it will be moved upon the line es-

established by the fifth and sixth companies, halted, and deployed.

In the preceding example it has been supposed that the battalion was in order of battle; but if in column, it would be deployed as skirmishers by the same command and according to the same principles.

If the deployment is to be made *forward*, the directing company, as soon as it is unmasked, will be moved ten or twelve paces in front of the head of the column, and will be then deployed on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will take its interval to the right or left, and deploy as soon as it is taken.

If the deployment is to be made by the flank, the directing company will be moved in the same manner to the front, as soon as it is unmasked, and will then be halted and deployed by the flank on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank, and when its interval is taken, will be moved on the line, halted, and deployed as soon as the company next towards the direction shall have finished its deployment.

It has been prescribed to place the reserves in echelon, in order that they may, in the event of a rally, be able to protect themselves without injuring each other; and the reserves of two contiguous companies have been united, in order to diminish the number of echelons, and to increase their capacity for resisting cavalry.

The echelons, in the example given, descend from right to left, but they may, on an indication from the colonel to that effect, be posted on the same principle, so as to descend from left to right.

When the color company is to be deployed as skirmishers, the color, without its guard, will be detached, and remain with the battalion reserve.

The Rally. (Fig. 36.)

The colonel may cause all the various movements prescribed for a company to be executed by the battalion, and

by the same commands and the same signals. When he wishes to rally the battalion, he will cause the *rally on the battalion* to be sounded, and will so dispose his reserve as to protect this movement.

The companies deployed as skirmishers will be rallied in

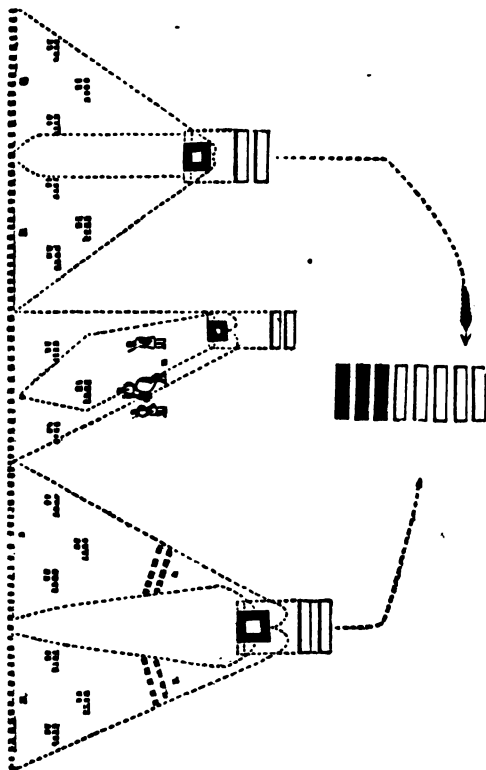


Fig. 24.—The Rally of a Battalion Deployed as Skirmishers

squares on their respective reserves; each reserve of two contiguous companies will form the first front of the square, throwing to the rear the sections on the flanks; the skirmishers who arrive first will complete the lateral fronts, and the last the fourth front. The officers and sergeants will superintend the rally, and as fast as the men arrive they will form them into two ranks, without regard to height, and cause them to face outwards.









The rally being effected, the commanders of squares will profit by any interval of time the cavalry may allow for putting them in safety, either by marching upon the battalion reserve, or by seizing an advantageous position; to this end, each of the squares will be formed into column, and march in this order; and if threatened anew, it will halt, and again form itself into square.

As the two companies successively arrive near the battalion reserve, each will re-form as promptly as possible, and without regard to designation or number, take place in the column next in rear of the companies already in it.

The battalion reserve will also form square if itself threatened by cavalry. In this case, the companies in marching towards it will place themselves promptly in the sectors without fire and thus march on the squares.

END OF INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

B

10th Comp.	9th Comp.	8th Comp.	7th Comp.	6th Comp.	5th Comp.	4th Comp.	3d Comp.	2d Comp.	1st Comp.
 SM		 N		 X  F  A	 QS		 LC		 V
Fifth Division.		Fourth Division.		Third Division.		Second Division.		First Division.	
Left Wing.					Right Wing.				

C. Colonel.

L. C. Lieutenant Colonel.

M. Major.

Q. Quarter Master.

A. Adjutant.


S. M. Sergeant Major.


Q. S. Q. Master Sergeant

X. Field Music.

F. Band.

 Color and Guard.

 Right Guide.

 Left Guide.

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of a Regiment in, Order of Battle, or in Line.

A REGIMENT is composed of ten companies, which will habitually be posted from right to left, in the following order: first, sixth, fourth, ninth, third, eighth, fifth, tenth, seventh, second, according to the rank of captains.

With a less number of companies the same principle will be observed, viz. : the first captain will command the right company, the second captain the left company, the third captain the right centre company, and so on.

The companies thus posted will be designated from right to left, *first* company, *second* company, &c. This designation will be observed in the manœuvres.

The first two companies on the right, whatever their denomination, will form the *first division*; the next two companies the *second division*; and so on, to the left.

Each company will be divided into two equal parts, which will be designated as the first and second platoon, counting from the right; and each platoon, in like manner, will be subdivided into two sections.

In all exercises and manœuvres, every regiment, or part of a regiment, composed of two or more companies, will be designated as a battalion.

The color, with a guard to be hereinafter designated, will be posted on the left of the right centre battalion company. That company, and all on its right, will be denominated the

right wing of the battalion; the remaining companies the *left wing*.

The odd and even files, numbered as one, two, in the company, from right to left, will form groups of four men, who will be designated *comrades in battle*.

The distance from one rank to another will be thirteen inches, measured from the breasts of the rear rank men to the back or knapsacks of the front rank men.

For manœuvring, the companies of a battalion will always be equalized, by transferring men from the strongest to the weakest companies.

Posts of Field Officers and Regimental Staff.

The field officers, colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, are supposed to be mounted, and on active service shall be on horseback. The adjutant, when the battalion is manœuvring, will be on foot.

The colonel will take post thirty paces in rear of the file closers, and opposite the centre of the battalion. This distance will be reduced whenever there is a reduction in the front of the battalion.

The lieutenant colonel and the major will be opposite the centres of the right and left wings respectively, and twelve paces in rear of the file closers.

The adjutant and sergeant major will be opposite the right and left of the battalion, respectively, and eight paces in rear of the file closers.

The adjutant and sergeant major will aid the lieutenant colonel and major, respectively, in the manœuvres.

The colonel, if absent, will be replaced by the lieutenant colonel, and the latter by the major. If all the field officers be absent, the senior captain will command the battalion; but if either be present, he will not call the senior captain to act as field officer, except in case of evident necessity.

The quarter-master, surgeon, and other staff officers, in one rank, on the left of the colonel, and three paces in his rear.

The quarter-master sergeant, on a line with the front rank of the field music, and two paces on the right.

Posts of Field Music and Band.

The buglers will be drawn up in four ranks, and posted twelve paces in rear of the file closers, the left opposite the centre of the left centre company. The senior principal musician will be two paces in front of the field music, and the other two paces in the rear.

The regimental band, if there be one, will be drawn up in two or four ranks, according to its numbers, and posted five paces in rear of the field music, having one of the principal musicians at its head.

Color-Guard.

In each battalion the color-guard will be composed of eight corporals, and posted on the left of the right centre company, of which company, for the time being, the guard will make a part.

The front rank will be composed of a sergeant, to be selected by the colonel, who will be called, for the time, *color-bearer*, with the two ranking corporals, respectively, on his right and left; the rear rank will be composed of the three corporals next in rank; and the three remaining corporals will be posted in their rear, and on the line of file closers. The left guide of the color-company, when these three last named corporals are in the rank of file closers, will be immediately on their left.

In battalions with less than five companies present, there will be no color-guard, and no display of colors, except it may be at reviews.

The corporals for the color-guard will be selected from those most distinguished for regularity and precision, as well in their positions under arms as in their marching. The latter advantage, and a just carriage of the person, are to be more particularly sought for in the selection of the color-bearer.

General Guides.

There will be two *general* guides in each battalion, selected, for the time, by the colonel, from among the ser-

geants (other than first sergeants) the most distinguished for carriage under arms, and accuracy in marching.

These sergeants will be respectively denominated, in the manoeuvres, *right general guide*, and *left general guide*, and be posted in the line of file closers; the first in rear of the right, and the second in rear of the left flank of the battalion.

Order of Instruction in the School of the Battalion.

In every course of instruction, the first lesson will be executed several times in the order in which it is arranged; but as soon as the battalion shall be confirmed in the principles of the lesson, the fires will be executed after the advance in line, and after the various formations into line of battle, and into square. Particular attention will be given to the fire by file, which is that principally used in war.

Every lesson of this school will be executed with the utmost precision; but the second, which comprehends the march in column, and the march in line of battle, being of the most importance, will be the oftenest repeated, especially in the beginning.

Great attention ought, also, to be given to the fourth lesson, which comprehends the march in column by division, and the dispositions against cavalry.

The successive formations will sometimes be executed by inversion.

In the beginning, the march in column, the march in line of battle, and the march by the flank, will be executed only in quick time, and will be continued until the battalion shall have become well established in the cadence of this step.

The non-cadenced step will be employed in this school only in the repetition of the movements incident to a column in route, or when great celerity may be required.

When it may be desired to give the men relief, arms may be supported, if at a halt, or marching by the flank.

In marching by the front, arms may be shifted to the

right shoulder; but not in the march in line of battle until the battalion shall be well instructed.

After arms have been carried for some time on the right shoulder, they may be shifted, in like manner, to the left shoulder.

When a battalion is manœuvring, its movements will be covered by skirmishers.

Formation of the Battalion.

Every colonel will labor to habituate his battalion to form line of battle, by night as well as by day, with the greatest possible promptitude.

The color-company will generally be designated as the directing company. That, as soon as formed, will be placed on the direction the colonel may have determined for the line of battle. The other companies will form on it, to the right and left, on the principles of successive formations which will be herein prescribed.

The color-bearer may have received the color from the hand of the colonel; but if there be daylight, and time, the color will be produced with due solemnity.

General Rules and Division of the School of the Battalion.

This school has for its object the instruction of battalions singly, and thus to prepare them for manœuvres in line. The harmony so indispensable in the movements of many battalions, can only be attained by the use of the same commands, the same principles, and the same means of execution. Hence, all colonels and actual commanders of battalions will conform themselves, without addition or curtailment, to what will herein be prescribed.

When a battalion instructed in this drill shall manœuvre in line, the colonel will regulate its movements, as prescribed in the third volume of the tactics for heavy infantry.

The school of the battalion will be divided into five parts.

The first will comprehend opening and closing ranks, and the execution of the different fires.

The second, the different modes of passing from the order in battle, to the order in column.

The third, the march in column, and the other movements incident thereto.

The fourth, the different modes of passing from the order in column to the order in battle.

The fifth will comprehend the march in line of battle, in advance and in retreat; the passage of defiles in retreat; the march by the flank; the formation by file into line of battle; the change of front; the column doubled on the centre; dispositions against cavalry; the rally and rules for manœuvring by the rear rank.

PART FIRST.

Opening and Closing Ranks, and the Execution of the different Fires.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To open and to close Ranks.

The colonel wishing the ranks to be opened, will command :

1. *Prepare to open ranks.*

At this command, the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves on the right of the battalion, the first on the flank of the file closers, and the second four paces from the front rank of the battalion.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

2. *To the rear, open order.* 3. MARCH.

At the second command, the covering sergeants, and

the sergeant on the left of the battalion, will place themselves four paces in rear of the front rank, and opposite their places in line of battle, in order to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; they will be aligned by the major on the left sergeant of the battalion, who will be careful to place himself exactly four paces in rear of the front rank, and to hold his piece between the eyes, erect and inverted, to better to indicate to the major the direction to be given to the covering sergeants.

At the command *march*, the rear rank and the file closers will step to the rear without counting steps; the men will pass a little in rear of the line traced for this rank, halt, and dress forward on the covering sergeants, who will align correctly the men of their respective companies.

The file closers will fall back and preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank, glancing eyes to the right; the lieutenant colonel will, from the right, align them on the file closer of the left, who, having placed himself accurately two paces from the rear rank, will invert his piece, and hold it up erect between his eyes, the better to be seen by the lieutenant colonel.

The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

4. FRONT.

At this command, the lieutenant colonel, major, and the left sergeant, will retake their places in line of battle.

The colonel will cause the ranks to be closed by the command:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Manual of Arms.

The ranks being closed, the colonel will cause the following times and pauses to be executed:

<i>Present arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Order arms</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Support arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Fix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Charge bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Unfix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>

ARTICLE THIRD.

Loading at Will, and the Firings.

The colonel will next cause to be executed loading at will, by the commands prescribed in the school of the company; the officers and sergeants in the ranks will half face to the right with the men at the eighth time of loading, and will face to the front when the men next to them come to a shoulder.

The colonel will cause to be executed the fire by company, the fire by wing, the fire by battalion, the fire by file, and the fire by rank, by the commands to be herein indicated.

The fire by company and the fire by file will always be direct; the fire by battalion, the fire by wing, and the fire by rank, may be either direct or oblique.

When the fire ought to be oblique, the colonel will give, at every round, the caution *right* (or *left*) *oblique*, between the commands *ready* and *aim*.

The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies of each division, as if the division were alone. The right company will fire first; the captain of the left will not give his first command till he shall see one or two pieces at a ready in the right company; the captain of the latter, after the first discharge, will observe the same rule in respect to the left company; and the fire will thus be continued alternately.

The colonel will observe the same rule in the firing by wing.

The fire by file will commence in all the companies at

once, and will be executed as has been prescribed in the school of the company. The fire by rank will be executed by each rank alternately, as has been prescribed in the school of the company.

The color-guard will not fire, but reserve itself for the defence of the color.

The fire by Company.

The colonel, wishing the fire by company to be executed, will command :

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence firing.*

At the first command, the captains and covering sergeants will take the positions indicated in the school of the company.

The color and its guard will step back at the same time, so as to bring the front rank of the guard in a line with the rear rank of the battalion. *This rule is general for all the different firings.*

At the second command, the odd numbered companies will commence to fire; their captains will each give the commands prescribed in the school of the company, observing to precede the command *company* by that of *first, third, fifth, or seventh*, according to the number of each.

The captains of the even numbered companies will give, in their turn, the same commands, observing to precede them by the number of their respective companies.

In order that the odd numbered companies may not all fire at once, their captains will observe, but only for the first discharge, to give the command *fire* one after another; thus, the captain of the third company will not give the command *fire* until he has heard the fire of the first company; the captain of the fifth will observe the same rule with respect to the third, and the captain of the seventh the same rule with respect to the fifth.

The colonel will cause the fire to cease by the sound to *cease firing*; at this sound, the men will execute what is

prescribed in the school of the company ; at the sound, for officers to take their places after firing, the captains, covering sergeants, and color-guard, will promptly resume their places in line of battle: *this rule is general for all the firings.*

The fire by Wing.

When the colonel shall wish this fire to be executed, he will command :

1. *Fire by wing.* 2. *Right wing.* 3. READY. 4. AIM.
5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

The colonel will cause the wings to fire alternately, and he will recommence the fire by the commands, 1. *Right wing* ; 2. AIM ; 3. FIRE ; 4. LOAD. 1. *Left wing* ; 2. AIM ; 3. FIRE ; 4. LOAD.

The fire by Battalion.

The colonel will cause this fire to be executed by the commands last prescribed, substituting for the first two, 1. *Fire by battalion* ; 2. *Battalion.*

The fire by File.

To cause this fire to be executed, the colonel will command :

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence firing.*

At the fourth command, the fire will commence on the right of each company, as prescribed in the school of the company. The colonel may, if he thinks proper, cause the fire to commence on the right of each platoon.

The fire by Rank.

To cause this fire to be executed, the colonel will command .

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *READY.* 4. *Rear rank.*
5. *AIM.* 6. *FIRE.* 7. *LOAD.*

This fire will be executed as has been explained in the school of the company, in following the progression prescribed for the two ranks which should fire alternately.

To fire by the rear Rank.

When the colonel shall wish the battalion to fire to the rear, he will command

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About—FACE.*

At the first command, the captains, covering sergeants, and file closers will execute what has been prescribed in the school of the company; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, and for this purpose, the corporal of his file will step before the corporal next on his right to let the color-bearer pass, and will then take his place in the front rank; the lieutenant colonel, adjutant, major, sergeant major, and the music will place themselves before the front rank, and face to the rear, each opposite his place in the line of battle—the first two passing around the right, and the others around the left of the battalion.

At the third command, the battalion will face about; the captains and covering sergeants observing what is prescribed in the school of the company.

The battalion facing thus by the rear rank, the colonel will cause it to execute the different fires by the same commands as if it were faced by the front rank.

The right and left wings will retain the same designations, although faced about; the companies also will preserve their former designations, as *first, second, third, &c.*

The fire by file will commence on the left of each company, now become the right.

The fire by rank will commence by the front rank, now become the rear rank. This rank will preserve its denomination.

The captains, covering sergeants, and color-guard will, at the first command given by the colonel, take the places prescribed for them in the fires, with the front rank leading.

The colonel, after firing to the rear, wishing to face the battalion to its proper front, will command:

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About—FACE.*

At these commands, the battalion will return to its proper front by the means prescribed for facing by the rear rank.

The fire by file being that most used in war, the colonel will give it the preference in the preparatory exercises, in order that the battalion may be brought to execute it with the greatest possible regularity.

When the colonel may wish to give some relaxation to the battalion, without breaking the ranks, he will command:

In place—REST (or REST).

When the colonel shall wish to cause arms to be stacked, he will bring the battalion to ordered arms, and then command:

1. *Stack—ARMS.* 2. *Break ranks.* 3. *MARCH.*

The colonel wishing the men to return to the ranks, will cause *attention* to be sounded, at which the battalion will re-form behind the stacks of arms. The sound being finished, the colonel, after causing the stacks to be broken, will command:

Battalion.

At this command, the men will fix their attention, and remain immovable.

PART SECOND.

Different Modes of Passing from the Order in Battle to the Order in Column.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To Break to the right or the left into Column.

Lines of battle will habitually break into column by company; they may also break by division or by platoon.

It is here supposed that the colonel wishes to break by company to the right; he will command:

1. *By company, right wheel.*
2. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH). (Fig. 37.)

At the first command, each captain will place himself rapidly before the centre of his company, and caution it that it has to wheel to the right; each covering sergeant will replace his captain in the front rank.

At the command *march*, each company will break to the right, according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company, each captain will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chiefs of platoon; the left guide, as soon as he can pass, will place himself on the left of the front rank to conduct the marching flank, and when he shall have approached near to the perpendicular, the captain will command: 1. *Such company.* 2. HALT.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant the left guide shall be at



Fig. 37.

the distance of three paces from the perpendicular, the company will halt; the guide will advance and place his left arm lightly against the breast of the captain, who will establish him on the alignment of the man who has faced to the right; the covering sergeant will place himself correctly on the alignment on the right of that man; which being executed, the captain will align his company by the left, command **FRONT**, and place himself two paces before its centre.

The captains having commanded **FRONT**, the guides, although some of them may not be in the direction of the preceding guides, will stand fast, in order that the error of a company that has wheeled too much or too little may not be propagated; the guides not in the direction will readily come into it when the column is put in march.

A battalion in line of battle will break into column by company to the left, according to the same principles, and by inverse means; the covering sergeant of each company will conduct the marching flank, and the left guide will place himself on the left of the front rank at the moment the company halts.

When the battalion breaks by division, the indication *division* will be substituted in the commands for that of *company*; the chief of each division (the senior captain) will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chief of company, and will place himself two paces before the centre of his division; the junior captain, if not already there will place himself in the interval between the two companies in the front rank, and be covered by the covering sergeant of the left company in the rear rank. The right guide of the right company will be the right guide, and the left guide of the left company, the left guide of the division.

When the battalion shall break by platoon to the right or to the left, each first lieutenant will pass around the left of his company to place himself in front of the second platoon, and for this purpose, each covering sergeant, except the one of the right company, will step, for the moment, in rear of the right file of his company.

The battalion being in column, the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves on the directing flank, the first abreast with the leading subdivision, and the other abreast with the last, and both six paces from the flank. The adjutant will be near the lieutenant colonel, and the sergeant major near the major.

The colonel will have no fixed place as the *instructor* of his battalion; but in columns composed of many battalions, he will place himself habitually on the directing flank fifteen or twenty paces from the guides, and abreast with the centre of his battalion.

When the colonel shall wish to move the column forward without halting it, he will caution the battalion to that effect, and command :

1. *By company, right wheel.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick—*
MARCH).

At the first command, the captains of companies will execute what is prescribed for breaking into column from a halt.

At the second command, they will remain in front of their companies to superintend the movement; the companies will wheel to the right on fixed pivots as indicated in the school of the company; the left guides will conform to what is prescribed above; when they shall arrive near the perpendicular, the colonel will command :

3. *Forward.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide left.*

At the third command, each covering sergeant will place himself by the right side of the man on the right of the front rank of his company. At the fourth command, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will cease to wheel and march straight forward. At the fifth, the men will take the touch of elbows to the left. The leading guide will march in the direction indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel. The guides will

immediately conform themselves to the principles of the march in column.

If the battalion be marching in line of battle, the colonel will cause it to wheel to the right or left, by the same commands and the same means; but he should previously caution the battalion that it is to continue the march.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To Break to the Rear, by the right or left, into Column, and to Advance or Retire by the right or left of Companies.

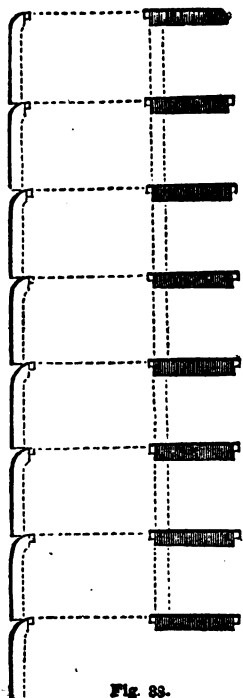


Fig. 38.

When the colonel shall wish to cause the battalion to break to the rear, by the right, into column by company, he will command :

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. *Battalion right—FACE.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* (Fig. 38.)

At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

At the second command, the battalion will face to the right; each captain will hasten to the right of his company, and break two files to the rear; the first file will break the whole depth of the two ranks; the second file less; which being executed, the captain will place himself so that his breast may touch lightly the left

arm of the front rank man of the last file in the company next on the right of his own. The captain of the right company will place himself as if there were a company on his right, and will align himself on the other captains. The covering sergeant of each company will break to the rear with the right files, and place himself before the front rank of the first file, to conduct him.

At the command *march*, the first file of each company will wheel to the right; the covering sergeant, placed before this file, will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear. The other files will come successively to wheel on the same spot. The captains will stand fast, see their companies file past, and at the instant the last file shall have wheeled, each captain will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left—DRESS.*

At the instant the company faces to the front, its left guide will place himself so that his left arm may touch lightly the breast of his captain.

At the fourth command, the company will align itself on its left guide, the captain so directing it, that the new alignment may be perpendicular to that which the company had occupied in line of battle, and, the better to judge this, he will step back two paces from the flank.

The company being aligned, the captain will command: FRONT, and take his place before its centre.

The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to break into column by company, to the rear, by the right, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, each captain will step briskly in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face *by the right flank.*

At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right; each captain will move rapidly to the right of his company and cause it to break to the right; the first file of each company will wheel to the right, and the covering sergeant placed in front of this file will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear; the other files will wheel successively at the same place as the first. The captain will see their companies file past them; when the last files have wheeled, the colonel will command:

3. *Battalion, by the left flank*—MARCH. 4. *Guide left*.

At the command *march*, the companies will face to the left, and march in column in the new direction. The captains will place themselves in front of the centres of their respective companies. At the fourth command, the guides will conform to the principles of the march in column; the leading one will move in the direction indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel. The men will take the touch of elbows to the left.

To break to the rear by the left, the colonel will give the same commands as in the case of breaking to the rear by the right, substituting the indication *left*, for that *right*, and the movement will be executed according to the same principles.

The battalion may be broken by division to the rear, by the right or left, in like manner; in this case, the indication *divisions* will be substituted, in the first command, for that of *companies*; the chiefs of division will conform themselves to what is prescribed for the chiefs of company. The junior captain in each division will place himself, when the division faces to a flank, by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company, who steps into the front rank.

If the battalion be in line and at a halt, and the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the front (or rear).* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*
4. *Guide right (left) or (centre).*

At the first command, each captain will move rapidly two paces in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will replace the captains in the front rank.

At the second command, the battalion will face to the right, and each captain moving quickly to the right of his company will cause files to break to the front, according to the principles indicated for breaking to the rear.

At the command *march*, each captain placing himself on the left of his leading guide will conduct his company perpendicularly to the original line. At the fourth command, the guide of each company will dress to the right, left, or centre, according to the indication given, taking care to preserve accurately his distance.

If the colonel should wish to move to the front, or rear, by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*.

If the battalion be in march, and the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the front (or rear).* 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* 4. *Guide right (left) or (centre).*

Which will be executed according to the principles and means prescribed for breaking to the front and rear from a halt. At the first command, the color and general guides will take their places as in column.

If the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*.

If the battalion be advancing by the right or left of companies, and the colonel should wish to form line to the front, he will command :

1. *By companies into line.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick—*
- MARCH). 3. *Guide centre.*

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will be formed in line, as prescribed in the school of the company.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To Ploy the Battalion into close Column.

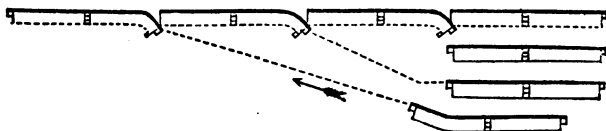
This movement may be executed by company or by division, on the right or left subdivision, or on any other subdivision, right or left in front.

The examples in this school will suppose the presence of four divisions, with directions for an odd company; but what will be prescribed for four, will serve equally for two, three or five divisions.

To ploy the battalion into close column by division in rear of the first, the colonel will command :

1. *Close column, by division.* 2. *On the first division, right in front.* 3. *Battalion, right—FACE.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

Fig. 89.



At the second command, all the chiefs of division will place themselves before the centres of their divisions; the

chief of the first will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three others will remind them that they will have to face to the right, and the covering sergeant of the right company of each division will replace his captain in the front rank, as soon as the latter steps out.

At the third command, the last three divisions will face to the right; the chief of each division will hasten to its right, and cause files to be broken to the rear, as indicated, the right guide will break at the same time, and place himself before the front rank man of the first file, to conduct him, and each chief of division will place himself by the side of this guide.

The moment these divisions face to the right, the junior captain in each will place himself on the left of the covering sergeant of the left company, who will place himself in the front rank. *This rule is general for all the ployments by division.*

At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will add, *guide left*; at this, its left guide will place himself on its left, as soon as the movement of the second division may permit, and the file closers will advance one pace upon the rear rank.

All the other divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off together, to take their places in the column; the second will gain, in wheeling by file to the rear, the space of six paces, which ought to separate its guide from the guide of the first division, and so direct its march as to enter the column on a line parallel to this division; the third and fourth divisions will direct themselves diagonally toward, but a little in rear of, the points at which they ought, respectively, to enter the column; at six paces from the left flank of the column, the head of each of these divisions will incline a little to the left, in order to enter the column as has just been prescribed for the second, taking care also to leave the distance of six paces between its guide and the guide of the preceding division. At the moment the divisions put themselves in march to enter the column, the file closers of each will incline to the left,

so as to bring themselves to the distance of a pace from the rear rank.

Each chief of these three divisions will conduct his division till he shall be up with the guide of the directing one; the chief will then himself halt, see his division file past, and halt it the instant the last file shall have passed, commanding: 1. *Such division*; 2. HALT; 3. FRONT; 4. *Left—DRESS.*

At the second command, the division will halt; the left guide will place himself promptly on the direction, six paces from the guide which precedes him, in order that, the column being formed, the divisions may be separated the distance of four paces.

At the third command, the division will face to the front; at the fourth, it will be aligned by its chief, who will place himself two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment so that his division may be parallel to that which precedes—which being done, he will command, FRONT and place himself before the centre of his division.

If any division, after the command *front*, be not at its proper distance, and this can only happen through the negligence of its chief, such division will remain in its place, in order that the fault may not be propagated.

The lieutenant colonel, placing himself in succession in rear of the left guides, will assure them on the direction as they arrive, and then move to his place outside of the left flank of the column six paces from, and abreast with, the first division. In assuring the guides on the direction, he will be a mere observer, unless one or more should fail to cover exactly the guide or guides already established. *This rule is general.*

The major will follow the movement abreast with the left of the fourth division, and afterwards take his position outside of the left flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, this division.

To play the battalion in front of the first division, the colonel will give the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for that of *right* in front. (Fig. 40.)

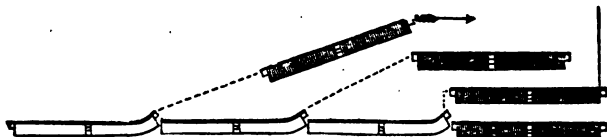


Fig. 40.

At the second and third commands, the chiefs of division and the junior captains will conform themselves to what is prescribed for plying into column right in front; but the chiefs of the last three divisions, instead of causing the first two files to break to the rear, will cause them to break to the front.

At the fourth command, the chief of the first division will add: *Guide right*.

The three other divisions will step off together to take their places in the column in front of the directing division; each will direct itself as prescribed, and will enter in such manner that, when halted, its guide may find himself six paces from the guide of the division next previously established in the column.

Each chief of these divisions will conduct his division, till his right guide shall be nearly up with the guide of the directing one; he will then halt his division, and cause it to face to the front; at the instant it halts, its right guide will face to the rear, place himself six paces from the preceding guide, and cover him exactly—which being done, the chief will align his division by the right.

The lieutenant colonel, placed in front of the right guide of the first division, will assure the guides on the direction as they successively arrive, and then move outside of the right flank of the column, to a point six paces from, and abreast with, the fourth division now in front.

The major will follow the movement abreast with the fourth division and then move outside of the right flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, the first division, now in the rear.

The movement being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides, about—FACE.

At this, the guides, who are faced to the rear, will face to the front.

To play the battalion in rear, or in front of the fourth division, the colonel will command :

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On the fourth division, left (or right) in front.* 3. *Battalion left—FACE.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

These movements will be executed according to the principles of those which precede, but by inverse means : the fourth division on which the battalion plays will stand fast ; the instant the movement commences, its chief will command, *guide right (or left).*

The foregoing examples embrace all the principles: thus, when the colonel shall wish to play the battalion on an interior division, he will command :

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On such division, right (or left) in front.* 3. *Battalion inwards—FACE.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* (Fig. 41.)

The instant the movement commences, the chief of the directing division will command, *guide left (or right).*

The divisions which, in the order in battle, are to the right of the directing division, will face to the left ; those which are to the left, will face to the right.

If the right is to be in front, the right divisions will play in front of the directing division, and the left in its

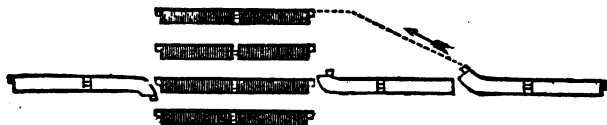


Fig. 41.

rear; the reverse, if the left is to be in front. And in all the foregoing suppositions, the division or divisions contiguous to the directing one, in wheeling by file to the front or rear, will gain the space of six paces, which ought to separate their guides from the guide of the directing division.

In all the ployments on an interior division, the lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides in front, and the major those in rear of the directing division.

If the battalion be in march, instead of at a halt, the movement will be executed by combining the two gaits of quick and double quick time, and always in rear of one of the flank divisions.

The battalion being in march, to ploy it in rear of the first division, the colonel will command:

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On the first division.* 3. *Battalion—by the right flank.* 4. *Double quick—MARCH.*

At the second command, each chief of division will move rapidly before the centre of his division and caution it to face to the right.

The chief of the first division will caution it to continue to march to the front, and he will command: *Quick march.*

At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will command: *Guide left.* At this, the left guide will move to the left flank of the division and direct himself on the point indicated.

The three other divisions will face to the right and move off in double quick time, breaking to the right to take their places in column; each chief of division will move rapidly to the right of his division in order to conduct it. The files will be careful to preserve their distances, and to march with a uniform and decided step. The color-bearer and general guides will retake their places in the ranks.

The second division will immediately enter the column, marching parallel to the first division; its chief will allow it to file past him, and when the last file is abreast of him,

will command: 1. *Second division, by the left flank—MARCH.* 2. *Guide left,* and place himself in front of the centre of his division.

At the command *march*, the division will face to the left; at the second command, the left guide will march in the trace of the left guide of the first division; the men will take the touch of elbows to the left. When the second division has closed to its proper distance, its chief will command: *Quick time—MARCH.* This division will then change its step to quick time.

The chiefs of the third and fourth divisions will execute their movements according to the same principles, taking care to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

If the battalion had been previously marching in line at double quick time, when the fourth division shall have gained its distance, the colonel will command: *Double quick—MARCH.*

In this movement, the lieutenant colonel will move rapidly to the side of the leading guide, give him a point of direction, and then follow the movements of the first division. The major will follow the movement abreast with the left of the fourth division.

PART THIRD.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To March in Column at Full Distance.

When the colonel shall wish to put the column in march, he will indicate to the leading guide two distinct objects in front, on the line which the guide ought to follow. This guide will immediately put his shoulders in a square with that line, take the more distant object as the point of direction, and the nearer one as the intermediate point.

If only a single prominent object present itself in the direction the guide has to follow, he will face to it as be-

fore, and immediately endeavor to catch on the ground some intermediate point, by which to give steadiness to his march on the point of direction.

There being no prominent object to serve as the point of direction, the colonel will despatch the lieutenant colonel or adjutant to place himself forty paces in advance, facing the column, and by a sign of the sword establish him on the direction he may wish to give to the leading guide; that officer being thus placed, this guide will take him as the point of direction, conforming himself to what is prescribed in the school of the company.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right.)*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* (Fig. 42.)

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of subdivision, the column will put itself in march, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the company.

The column being in march, the colonel will frequently cause the *about* to be executed while marching; to this effect, he will command:

1. *Battalion, right about.* 2. *MARCH.*
3. *Guide right.*

At the second command, the companies will face to the right about, and the column will then march forward in an opposite direction; the chiefs of subdivision will remain behind the front rank, the file closers in front of the rear rank, and the guides will place themselves in the same rank. The lieutenant colonel will remain abreast of the first division, now in rear; the major will give a point of direction to the leading guide, and march abreast of him.

The principles prescribed in the school of

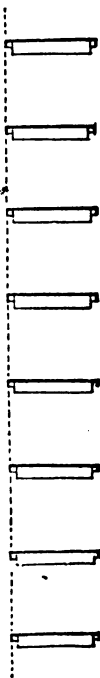


Fig. 42.

- the company for the march in column will give sufficient exactness to the direction of the column, and also enable it to form *forward* or *faced the rear on the right*, or *on the left*, into line of battle, and to *close in mass*.

But when a column, arriving in front, or in rear of the line of battle, or, rather, on one of the extremities of that line, has to prolong itself on it, in order to form *to the left* or *to the right* into line of battle, then, as it is essential, to prevent the column from cutting the line, or sensibly deviating from it, other means, as follows, will be employed.

The Column arriving in Front of the Line of Battle, to Prolong it on this Line. (Fig. 43.)

If the column, right in front arrive in front of the line of battle, as it should cross it and find itself four paces beyond it after having changed

direction, the colonel will cause to be placed, in advance, a marker on the line to indicate the point at which the column ought to cross it, and another marker to indicate the point where the first subdivision should commence to wheel; he will be so placed that when the wheel is executed, the left guide will find himself four paces within the line of battle. The chief of the leading subdivision, when the head of the column shall have arrived near the line, will take the guide to the right, and this guide will immediately direct himself on the second marker. On arriving abreast of him, this subdivision will be wheeled to the left, and when the wheel is completed, the guide will be changed again to the left; this guide will then march parallel to the line of battle.

The instant the first subdivision wheels, the right general guide, who, by a caution from the lieutenant colonel, will

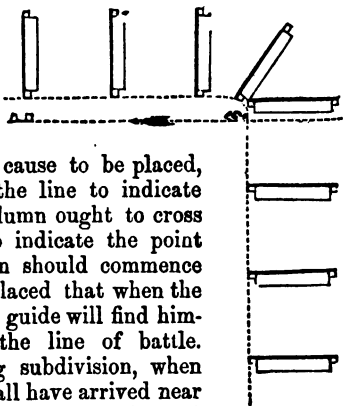


Fig. 43

before have placed himself on the line of battle at the point where the column crosses it, and who will have faced to the two points of direction in his front, indicated by the colonel, will march forward correctly on the prolongation of those points.

The color-bearer will place himself in like manner on the line of battle; and, at the instant the color subdivision wheels, he will prolong his march on that line, abreast with this subdivision, taking care to carry the color-lance before the centre of his person, and to maintain himself exactly in the direction of the general guide who precedes him; and the point of direction in front which will have been indicated to him.

Finally, the left general guide will place himself in the same manner on the line of battle; and, at the instant the last subdivision of the battalion wheels, he will march correctly in the direction of the color-bearer, and the other general guide.

The guide of the first subdivision will march steadily abreast with the right general guide, and about four paces to his right; each of the guides of the following subdivisions will march in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes him.

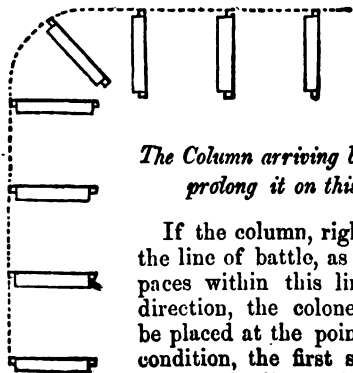


Fig. 44.

The Column arriving behind the Line of Battle, to prolong it on this Line. (Fig. 44.)

If the column, right in front, arrive behind the line of battle, as it ought to find itself four paces within this line, after having changed direction, the colonel will cause a marker to be placed at the point where, according to that condition, the first subdivision ought to commence wheeling. Another marker will be es-

established on the line of battle, to indicate the point at which the general guides ought, in succession, to begin to prolong themselves on that line; he will be so placed that each subdivision, having finished its wheel, may find itself nearly in a line with this marker.

At the instant the first subdivision, after having wheeled to the right, begins to prolong itself, parallelly to the line of battle, the leading general guide, placed in advance on that line, will direct himself on the two points taken in his front; the color-bearer and the other general guide will successively place themselves on the same line the instant that their respective subdivisions shall have finished their wheel.

The Column arriving on the Right or the Left of the Line of Battle, to Prolong it on this Line.

If the column, instead of arriving in front or in rear of the line of battle, arrive on its right or left, and if it have to prolong itself on that line, in order afterwards to form to the left or right into line of battle, the colonel will bring the color and general guides on the flank of the column by the command *color and general guides on the line*: and these guides will prolong themselves on the line of battle, conforming to what is prescribed above.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Column in Route.

A column in route, like a column in manœuvre, ought never to have a depth greater than about the front it had occupied in the line of battle, less the front of a subdivision.

A column in route will be habitually formed by company.

When a column in route shall arrive at a pass too narrow to receive the front of a company, the column will diminish front by platoon before entering. This movement will be executed successively, or by all the companies at once.

If, however, the defile be very short, and it may be passed by the diminution of a few files, it will be preferable to break to the rear the limited number of files.

The column being by platoon, and the want of space rendering a further diminution of front necessary, it will be diminished by section, if the platoons be of twelve or more files.

The column being by section, will continue to march by that front as long as the defile may permit.

If the platoons have less than twelve files, one or two files will be broken to the rear, according to the narrowing of the defile, and the route step continued as long as six files can march abreast.

What has just been explained for breaking files to the rear in a column by platoon, is equally applicable to a column by section.

If the defile be too narrow to permit six men to march abreast, the subdivisions will be marched successively by the flank by the command

1. *Company by the right (or left) flank.*
2. *By file left (or right) MARCH.*

The battalion marching by the flank, will be formed into column, by section, by platoon, or by company, as soon as the breadth of the way may permit; the several movements which these formations include will be executed by the commands of the captains, as their companies successively clear the defile, observing the following rules.

As soon as the way is sufficiently broad to contain six men abreast, the captain will command:

1. *By section (or by platoon) into line.*
2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the subdivisions indicated will form themselves into line; the files which have not been able to enter, will follow (by the flank) the last four files of their subdivision which have entered into line.

Changes of direction will always be made without com-

mand; if the change be important, a caution merely from the respective chiefs to their subdivisions will suffice, and the rear rank, as well as the files broken to the rear, will execute successively the movement where the front rank had executed it.

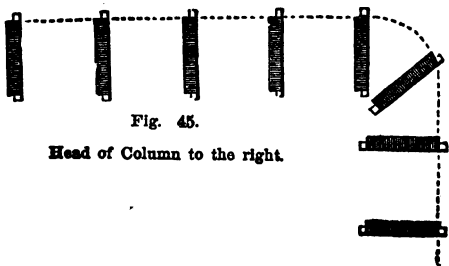
ARTICLE THIRD.

To change Direction in Column at full Distance.

The column being in march in the cadenced step, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction, he will go to the point at which the change ought to be commenced, and establish a marker there, presenting the breast to the flank of the column. The leading subdivision being within a few paces of the marker, the colonel will command:

Head of column to the left (or right). (Fig. 45.)

At this, the chief of the leading subdivision will immediately take the guide on the side opposite the change of direction, if not already there. This guide will direct himself so as to graze the breast of the marker; arrived at this point, the chief will cause his subdivision to change direction by the commands and according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company. When the wheel



is completed, the chief of this subdivision will retake the guide, if changed, on the side of the primitive direction.

The chief of each succeeding subdivision, as well as the guides, will conform to what has just been explained for the leading subdivision.

The major will see that the guides direct themselves on the marker posted at the point of change, so as to graze his breast.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

To Halt the Column.

The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command :

1. *Column.* 2. **HALT.**

At the second command, briskly repeated by the captains, the column will halt; no guide will stir, though he may have lost his distance, or be out of the direction of the preceding guides.

The column being in march, in double quick time, will be halted by the same commands. At the command *halt*, the men will halt in their places, and will themselves rectify their positions in the ranks.

The column being halted, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line of battle, he will move a little in front of the leading guide, and face to him; this guide and the following one will fix their eyes on the colonel, in order promptly to conform themselves to his directions.

If the colonel judge it not necessary to give a general direction to the guides, he will limit himself to rectifying the position of such as may be without, or within the direction, by the command *guide of* (such) *company*, or *guides of* (such) *companies, to the right* (or *to the left*): at this command, the guides designated will place themselves on the direction; the others will stand fast.

If, on the contrary, the colonel judge it necessary to

give a general direction to the guides of the column, he will place the first two on the direction he shall have chosen, and command :

Guides, cover.

At this, the following guides will promptly place themselves on the direction covering the first two in file, and each precisely at a distance equal to the front of his company, from the guide immediately preceding; the lieutenant colonel will assure them in the direction, and the colonel will command :

Left, (or right)—Dress.

At this command, each company will incline to the right or left, and dress forward or backward, so as to bring the designated flank to rest on its guide; each captain will place himself two paces outside of his guide, promptly align his company parallelly with that which precedes, then command **FRONT**, and return to his place in column.

Finally, if the general guides march on the flank of the column, the colonel, having halted it, will place himself in rear of the color-bearer, to ascertain whether the leading general guide and the color-bearer be exactly on the direction of the two points in advance, and establish them on that direction if they be not already on it; the major will do the like, in respect to the general guide in the rear; which being executed, the colonel will command :

1. *Guides*—ON THE LINE.

At this command, the guide of each company of the directing flank will step promptly into the direction of the general guides, and face to the front. The lieutenant colonel, placed in front of, and facing to, the leading general guide, and the major, placed in rear of the rear-most one, will promptly align the company guides.

The colonel, having verified the direction of the guides, will command :

Left (or right)—DRESS.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

To Close the Column to Half Distance, or in Mass.

A column by company being at full distance right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to close to half distance, on the leading company, he will command:

1. *To half distance, close column.* 2. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the captain of the leading company will caution it to stand fast.

At the command *march*, which will be repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the leading company, this company will stand fast, and its chief will align it by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

All the other companies will continue to march, and as each in succession arrives at platoon distance from the one which precedes, its captain will halt it.

At the instant that each company halts, its guide will place himself on the direction of the guides who precede, and the captain will align the company by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

No particular attention need be given to the general direction of the guides before they respectively halt; it will suffice if each follow in the trace of the one who precedes him.

If the column be in march, the colonel will cause it to close by the same commands.

If the column be marching in double quick time, at the first command, the captain of the leading company will command *quick time*; the chiefs of the other companies will caution them to continue their march.

At the command *march*, the leading company will march in quick, and the other companies in double quick time; and as each arrives at platoon distance from the preceding one, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

When the rearmost company shall have gained its distance, the colonel will command:

Double quick—MARCH.

When the colonel shall wish to halt the column and to cause it to close to half distance at the same time, he will notify the captain of the leading company of his intention, who at the command *march* will halt his company and align it by the left.

If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should not give the command *double quick*, the captain of the leading company will halt his company at the command *march*, and align it by the left. In the case, where the colonel adds the command *double quick*, the captains of companies will conform to what is prescribed for this movement when marching at double quick time.

To Close the Column on the Eighth, or Rearmost Company.

The column being at a halt, if instead of causing it to close to half distance on the first company, the colonel should wish to cause it to close on the eighth, he will command:

1. *On the eighth company, to half distance close column.*
2. *Battalion about—FACE.*
3. *Column forward.*
4. *Guide right.*
5. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* (Fig. 46).

At the second command, all the companies, except the eighth, will face about, and their guides will remain in the front rank, now the rear.

At the fourth command, all the captains will place themselves two paces outside of their companies on the directing flank.

At the command *march*, the eighth company will stand fast, and its captain will align it by the left, the other companies will put themselves in march, and, as each arrives at platoon distance from the one established before it, its captain will halt it and face it to the front. At the moment that each company halts, the left guide, remaining faced to the rear, will place himself promptly on the direction of the guides already established. Immediately after, the captain will align his company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace on the rear rank. If this movement be executed in double quick time, each captain, in turn, will halt, and command: *Such company, right about—HALT*. At this command, the company designated will face to the right about and halt.

All the companies being aligned, the colonel will cause the guides, who stand faced to the rear, to face about.

The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to close it on the eighth company, he will command :

1. *On the eighth company, to half distance, close column.*
2. *Battalion right about.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* 4. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the captain of the eighth company will caution his company that it will remain faced to the front; the captains of the other companies will caution their companies that they will have to face about.

At the command *march*, the captain of the eighth company will halt his company and align it by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

The captains of the other companies, at the same command, will place themselves on the flank of the column;

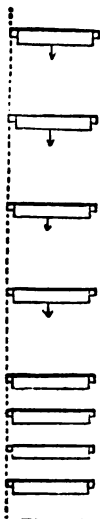


Fig. 46.

the subdivisions will face about, and as each arrives at platoon distance from the company immediately preceding it, its chief will face it to the front and halt it.

The instant each company halts, the guide on the directing flank, remaining faced to the rear, will quickly place himself on the direction of the guides already established. After which, the captain will align the company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

ARTICLE SIXTH.

To march in Column at Half Distance, or Closed in Mass.

A column at half distance or in mass, being at a halt, the colonel will put it in march by the commands prescribed for a column at full distance.

The means of direction will also be the same for a column at half distance or in mass, as for a column at full distance, except that the general guides will not step out.

A column at half distance or in mass, being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will give the commands prescribed for halting a column at full distance, and if, afterwards, he judge it necessary to give a general direction to the guides of the column, he will employ, to this end, the commands and means before indicated for that purpose.

In columns at half distance or closed in mass, chiefs of subdivision will repeat the commands *march* and *halt*, as in columns at full distance.

A column by division or company, whether at full or half distance or closed in mass, at a halt or marching, can be faced to the right or left, and marched off in the new direction.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

To Change Direction in Column at Half Distance. (Fig. 47.)

A column at half distance, being in march, will change

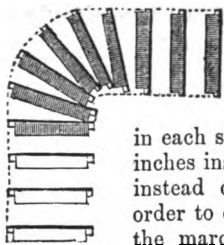


Fig. 47.

direction by the same commands and according to the same principles as a column at full distance; but as the distance between the subdivisions is less, the pivot man in each subdivision will take steps of fourteen inches instead of nine, and of seventeen inches instead of eleven, according to the gait, in order to clear, in time, the wheeling point, and the marching flank will describe the arc of a larger circle, the better to facilitate the movement.

ARTICLE EIGHTH.

*To Change Direction in Column closed in Mass.**1st. To Change Direction in Marching. (Fig. 48.)*

A column by division, closed in mass, being in march, will change direction by the *front* of subdivisions.

Whether the change be made to the reverse, or to the pivot flank, it will always be executed on the principle of wheeling in marching; to this end, the colonel will first cause the battalion to take the guide on the flank opposito

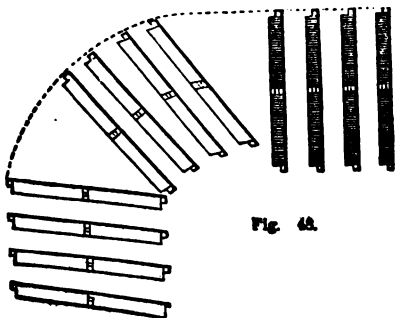


Fig. 48.

to the intended change of direction, if it be not already on that flank.

A column by division, closed in mass, right in front, having to change direction to the right, the colonel, after having caused a marker to be placed at the point where the change ought to commence, will command :

1. *Battalion, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the leading division will wheel as if it were part of a column at half distance.

The instant that this division commences the wheel, all the others will, at once, conform themselves to its movement; to this end the left guide of each, advancing slightly the left shoulder and lengthening a little the step, will incline to the left, and will observe, at the same time, to gain so much ground to the front that there may constantly be an interval of four paces between his division and that which precedes it; and as soon as he shall cover the preceding guide, he will cease to incline and then march exactly in his trace.

Each division will conform itself to the movement of its guide; the men will feel lightly the elbow towards him and advance a little the left shoulder the instant the movement commences; each file, in inclining, will gain so much the less ground to the front, as the file shall be nearer to the pivot, and the right guide will gain only so much as may be necessary to maintain between his own and the preceding division the same distance which separates their marching flanks.

Each chief of division, turning to it, will regulate its march, and see that it remains constantly included between its guides, that its alignment continues nearly parallel to that of the preceding division, and that the centre bends only a little to the rear.

The colonel will superintend the movement, and cause the pivot of the leading division to lengthen or to shorten the step, conforming to the principle established school of

the company, if either be necessary to facilitate the movement of the other divisions.

The colonel, seeing the wheel nearly ended, will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant the leading division completes its wheel, it will resume the direct march; the other divisions will conform themselves to this movement; and if any guide find himself not covering his immediate leader, he will, by slight degrees, bring himself on the trace of that guide by advancing the right shoulder.

If the column, right in front, has to change direction to the left, the colonel will first cause it to take the guide to the right, and then command :

1. *Battalion, left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the battalion will change direction to the left, according to the principles just prescribed, and by inverse means.

When the battalion shall have resumed the direct march, the colonel will change the guide to the left, on seeing the last three guides nearly in the direction of the one in front.

The foregoing changes of direction will be executed according to the same principles in a column, left in front.

A column by company, closed in mass, will change direction in marching, by the commands and means indicated for a column by division.

The guide who is the pivot of the particular wheel, ought to maintain himself at his usual distance of six paces from the guide who precedes him; if this distance be not exactly preserved, the divisions would necessarily become *confounded*, which must be carefully avoided.

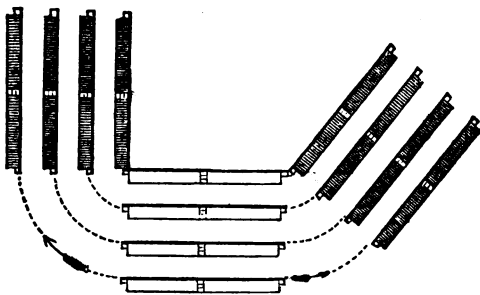
2d. *To Change Direction from a Halt.*

Fig. 49.

A column by company, or by division, closed in mass, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to give it a new direction, and in which it is to remain, he will cause it to execute this movement by the flanks of subdivisions, in the following manner:

The battalion having the right in front, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction by the right flank, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel the point of direction to the right; this officer will immediately establish, on the new direction, two markers, distant from each other a little less than the front of the first subdivision, the first marker in front of the right file of this subdivision; which being executed, he will command:

1. *Change direction by the right flank.* 2. *Battalion, right—FACE.* 3. *MARCH* (or *double quick—MARCH*). (Fig. 49.)

At the second command, the column will face to the right, and each chief of subdivision will place himself by the side of his right guide.

At the command *march*, all the subdivisions will step off together: the right guide of the leading one will direct himself from the first step, parallelly to the markers placed

in advance on the new direction; the chief of the subdivision will not follow the movement, but see it file past, and as soon as the left guide shall have passed, he will command:

1. *First company* (or *first division*).
2. HALT.
3. FRONT.
4. *Left*—DRESS.

At the fourth command, the subdivision will place itself against the two markers, and be promptly aligned by its chief.

The right guide of each of the following subdivisions will conform himself to the direction of the right guide of the subdivision preceding his own in the column, so as to enter on the new direction parallelly to that subdivision, and at the distance of four paces from its rear rank.

Each chief of subdivision will halt in his own person, on arriving opposite to the left guides already placed on the new direction, see his subdivision file past, and conform himself, in halting and aligning it, to what is prescribed for the chief of the leading subdivision.

If the change of direction be by the left flank, the colonel will cause markers to be established as before, the first in front of the left file of the leading subdivision, and then give the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for *right*.

At the second command, all the subdivisions will face to the left, and each chief will place himself by the side of his left guide.

At the command *march*, all the subdivisions will step off together, each conducted by its chief.

The guide of the leading subdivision will direct himself, from the first step, parallelly to the markers; the subdivision will be conducted by its chief; and as soon as its left guide shall have passed the second marker, it will be halted and aligned as prescribed above; and so of each of the following subdivisions.

The colonel will hold himself on the designated flank, to see that each subdivision enters the new direction parallelly

to the leading one, and at the prescribed distance from that which precedes.

The lieutenant colonel will place himself in front of, and facing to, the guide of the leading subdivision, and will assure the positions of the following guides, as they successively arrive on the new direction.

The major will follow the movement abreast with the last subdivision.

In order that this movement may be executed with facility and precision, it is necessary that the leading subdivision should entirely unmask the column; for example, the movement being made by the right flank, it is necessary, before halting the leading subdivision, that its left guide shall, at least, have arrived at the place previously occupied by its right guide, in order that each following subdivision which has to pass over a space at least equal to its front to put itself in the new direction, and whose left ought to pass the point at which the right had rested, may, at the command *halt*, find itself, in its whole front, parallel to the leading subdivision.

By this method there is no direction that may not be given to a column in mass.

ARTICLE NINTH.

Being in Column at Half Distance, or closed in Mass, to take Distances.

A column at half distance will take full distances *by* the head of the column when it has to prolong itself on the line of battle. If, on the contrary, it has to form itself in line of battle on the ground it occupies, it will take distances *on* the leading or *on* the rearmost subdivision, according as the one or other may find itself at the point where the right or left of the battalion ought to rest in line of battle.

1st. To take Distances by the Head of the Column.

The column being by company at half distance and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to take full distances by the head, he will command :

By the head of column, take wheeling distance.

At this command, the captain of the leading company will put it in march ; to this end, he will command :

1. First company, forward. 2. Guide left. 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

When the second shall have nearly its wheeling distance its captain will command :

1. Second company, forward. 2. Guide left. 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the command *march*, which will be pronounced at the instant that this company shall have its wheeling distance, it will step off smartly, taking the step from the preceding company. Each of the other companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

The colonel will see that each company puts itself in march at the instant it has its distance.

The lieutenant colonel will hold himself at the head of the column, and direct the march of the leading guide.

The major will hold himself abreast with the rearmost guide.

If the column, instead of being at a halt, be in march, the colonel will give the same commands, and add :

MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

If the column be marching in quick time, at the command *march*, the captain of the leading company will cause

double quick time to be taken ; which will also be done by the other captains as the companies successively attain their proper wheeling distance.

If the column be marching in *double quick time*, the leading company will continue to march at the same gait. The captains of the other companies will cause *quick time* to be taken, and as each company gains its proper distance, its captain will cause it to retake the *double quick step*.

2d. To take Distances on the Rear of the Column.

If the colonel wish to take distances on the rearmost company, he will establish two markers on the direction he shall wish to give to the line of battle, the first opposite to the rearmost company, the second marker towards the head of the column, at company distance from the first, and both facing to the rear ; at the same time, the right general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant colonel, will move rapidly a little beyond the point to which the head of the column will extend, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

1. *On the eighth company, take wheeling distance.*
2. *Column forward.*
3. *Guide left.*
4. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the third command, the captains will place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank ; the captain of the eighth company will caution it to stand fast.

At the command *march*, repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the eighth company, this latter company will stand fast ; its chief will align it by the left on the first marker, who is opposite to this company, and place himself before its centre, after commanding **FRONT**. At this command, the marker will retire, and the left guide will take his place.

All the other companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the leading one directing himself a little within

the right general guide; when the seventh company has arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will halt, and align it on this marker, in the manner prescribed for the eighth company.

When the captain of the sixth company shall see that there is, between his company and the seventh, the necessary space for wheeling into line, he will halt his company; the guide facing to the rear will place himself promptly on the direction, and the moment he shall be assured in his position, the captain will align the company by the left, and then place himself two paces before its centre; the other companies will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the sixth company.

The colonel will follow the movement, and see that each company halts at the prescribed distance; he will promptly remedy any fault that may be committed, and, as soon as all the companies shall be aligned, he will cause the guides, who are faced to the rear, to face about.

The lieutenant colonel will successively assure the left guides on the direction, placing himself in their rear, as they arrive.

The major will hold himself at the head of the column, and will direct the march of the leading guide.

8d. To take Distances on the Head of the Column.

The colonel wishing to take distances on the leading company, will establish two markers in the manner just prescribed, one abreast with this company, and the other at company distance in rear of the first, but both facing to the front: the left general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant colonel, will move rapidly to the rear and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, a little beyond the point to which the rear of the column will extend: these dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *On the first company, take wheeling distance.* 2. *Battalion, about—FACE.* 3. *Column, forward.* 4. *Guide right.* 5. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, all the companies, except the one designated, will face about, the guides remaining in the front rank, now become the rear.

At the fourth command, the captains will place themselves outside of their guides.

At the command *march*, the captain of the designated company will align it, as prescribed for the captain of the rear company in taking distances on the rear of the column.

The remaining companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the rearmost one will direct himself a little within the left general guide; when the second company shall have arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will face it about, and align it, as has just been prescribed for the first company.

The instant that the third company shall have its wheeling distance, its captain will halt it facing it about, and align it by the left; the captains of the remaining companies will each, in succession, conform himself to what has just been prescribed for the captain of the third.

The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major will conform to what is prescribed for taking distances on the rear of the column.

These various movements will be executed according to the same principles in a column with the left in front.

They will be executed in like manner in a column closed in mass; but, if it be the wish of the colonel to open out the column to half, instead of full distance, he will substitute, in the commands, the indication *half*, for that of *wheeling* distance.

In a column by division, distances will be taken according to the same principles.

ARTICLE TENTH.

Countermarch of a Column at full or half Distance.

In a column at full or half distance, the countermarch will be executed by the means indicated, school of the company; to this end, the colonel will command :

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion right (or left)—FACE.* 3. *By file left (or right).* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

To Countermarch a Column Closed in Mass. (Fig. 50.)

If the column be closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed by the commands and means subjoined.

The column being supposed formed by division, right in front, the colonel will command :

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion, right and left—FACE.* 3. *By file left and right.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the chiefs of the odd numbered divisions will caution them to face to the right, and the chiefs of the others to face to the left.

At the second command, the odd divisions will face to the right, and the even to the left; the right and left guides of all the divisions will face about; the chiefs of odd divisions will hasten to their right and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the left of the leading front rank man of his division; the chiefs

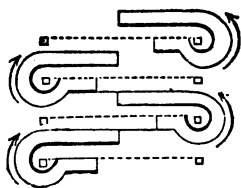
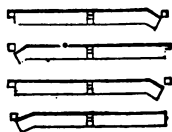


Fig. 50.

of even divisions will hasten to their left, and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the right of his leading front rank man.

At the command *march*, all the divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off smartly, the guides standing fast; each odd division will wheel by file to the left around its right guide; each even division will wheel by file to the right around its left guide, each division so directing its march as to arrive behind its opposite guide, and when its head shall be up with this guide, the chief will halt the division, and cause it to face to the front.

Each division, on facing to the front, will be aligned by its chief by the right; to this end, the chiefs of the even divisions will move rapidly to the right of their respective divisions.

The divisions being aligned, each chief will command **FRONT**; at this, the guides will shift to their proper flanks.

In a column with the left in front, the countermarch will be executed by the same commands and means; but all the divisions will be aligned by the left, to this end, the chiefs of the odd divisions will hasten to the left of their respective divisions as soon as the latter shall have been faced to the front.

The colonel, placed on the directing flank, will superintend the general movement.

The countermarch being ended, the lieutenant colonel will always place himself abreast with the leading, and the major abreast with the rearmost division.

In a column by company, closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed by the same means and commands, applying to companies what is prescribed for divisions.

The countermarch will always take place from a halt, whether the column be closed in mass, or at full, or half distance.

ARTICLE ELEVENTH.

Being in Column by Company, closed in Mass, to form Divisions.

The column being closed in mass, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

1. *Form divisions.* 2. *Left companies, left—FACE.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).* (Fig. 51.)

At the first command, the captains of the left companies will caution them to face to the left.

At the second command, the left companies will face to the left, and their captains will place themselves by the side of their respective left guides.

The right companies, and their captains, will stand fast; but the right and left guides of each of these companies will place themselves respectively before the right and left files of the company, both guides facing to the right, and each resting his right arm gently against the breast of the front rank man in the file, in order to mark the direction.

At the command *march*, the left companies only will put themselves in march, their captains standing fast; as each shall see that his company, filing past, has nearly cleared the column, he will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. *HALT.* 3. *FRONT.*

The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to march; the second at the instant it shall have cleared its right company; and the third immediately after the second.

The company having faced to the front, the files, if there

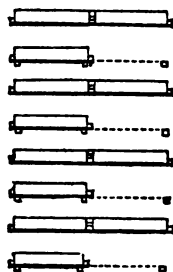


Fig. 51.

be intervals between them, will promptly incline to the right; the captain will place himself on the left of the right company of the division, and align himself correctly on the front rank of that company.

The left guide will place himself at the same time before one of the three left files of his company, face to the right, and cover correctly the guides of the right company; the moment his captain sees him established on the direction, he will command :

Right—Dress.

At this, the left company will dress forward on the alignment of the right company; the front rank man, who may find himself opposite to the left guide, will, without preceding his rank, rest lightly his breast against the right arm of this guide; the captain of the left company will direct its alignment on this man, and the alignment being assured, he will command, **FRONT**; but not quit his position.

The colonel seeing the divisions formed, will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this, the guides who have marked the fronts of divisions will return to their places in column, the left guide of each right company passing through the interval in the centre of the division, and the captains will place themselves, the senior in front, and the junior in the interval between the companies.

The colonel, from the directing flank of the column, will superintend the general execution of the movement.

If the column be in march, instead of at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command :

1. *Form divisions.* 2. *Left companies, by the left flank.*
3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, the captains of the right companies will command, *Mark time*, the captains of the left companies will caution their companies to *face by the left flank*.

At the third command, the right companies will mark time, the left companies will face to the left; the captains of the left companies will each see his company file past him, and when it has cleared the column, will command:

Such company by the right flank—MARCH.

As soon as the divisions are formed, the colonel will command:

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH.

At the fifth command, the column will resume the gait at which it was marching previous to the commencement of the movement. The guides of each division will remain on the right and left of their respective companies; the left guide of the right company will pass into the line of file closers, before the two companies are united; the right guide of the left company will step into the rear rank.

Being in Column at Full or Half Distance to form Divisions.

If the column be at a halt, and, instead of being closed in mass, is at full or half distance, divisions will be formed in the same manner; but the captains of the left companies, if the movement be made in quick time, after commanding **FRONT**, will each place himself before the centre of his company, and command, 1. *Such company, forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH. If the movement be made in double quick time, each will command as soon as his company has cleared the column:

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 3. MARCH.

The right guide of each left company will so direct his march as to arrive by the side of the man on the left of the right company. The left company being nearly up with the rear rank of the right company, its captain will halt it, and the movement will be finished as prescribed for forming divisions with the column closed in mass.

If the left be in front, the movement will be executed by inverse means: the right companies will conform themselves

to what is prescribed above for the left companies; and the two guides, placed respectively, before the right and left files of each left company, will face to the left. At the command, *Guides posts*, given by the colonel, the guides, who have marked the front of divisions, and the captains, will quickly retake their places in the column.

If the column be marching at full distance, the divisions will be formed as prescribed in the school of the company for forming company when broken into platoons; substituting division for company in the command. If it be marching at half distance, the formation will take place by the commands and according to the principles indicated for forming divisions from column of companies closed in mass, while marching; if the column be marching in double quick time, the companies which should mark time will march in quick time by the command of their captains.

Remarks on the Formation of Divisions from a Halt.

As this movement may be considered as the element of deployments, it ought to be executed with the utmost accuracy.

If companies marching by the flank do not preserve exactly their distances, there will be openings between the files at the instant of facing to the front.

If captains halt their companies too early, they will want space, and the files which have not cleared the flanks of the standing companies will not be able to dress into line without pushing their ranks laterally.

If on the contrary the companies be halted too late, it will be necessary for them to incline to the right or left in dressing; and in deployments, either of these faults would lead to error in the following companies.

As often as a guide shall have to step out to place himself before his subdivision in order to mark the direction, he will be particularly careful to place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three outer files of the subdivision when they shall be aligned: if he take too much distance,

and neither of those files finds itself against him, the chiefs of the subdivision will have no assured point on which to direct the alignment.

PART FOURTH.

Different Modes of Passing from the Order in Column to the Order in Battle.

ARTICLE FIRST.

Manner of Determining the Line of Battle.

The line of battle may be marked or determined in three different manners: *first*, by placing two markers eighty or a hundred paces apart, on the direction it is wished to give to the line; *second*, by placing a marker at a point at which it may intended to rest a flank, and then choosing a second point towards, or beyond the opposite flank, and there posting a second marker distant from each other a little less than the leading subdivision; *third*, by choosing at first the points of direction for the flanks, and then determining, by intermediate points, the straight line between those selected points, both of which may sometimes be beyond reach.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Different Modes of Passing from Column at Full Distance into Line of Battle.

1. To the left (or right)
 2. On the right (or left)
 3. Forward,
 4. Faced to the rear,
- } into line of battle.

1. Column at Full Distance, Right in Front, to the Left into Line of Battle.

A column, right in front, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it to the left into line, he will assure the positions of the guides by the means previously indicated, and then command :

1. Left into Line, wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the right guide of the leading company will hasten to place himself on the direction of the left guides of the column, face to them, and place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three right files of his company, when they shall be in line: he will be assured in this position by the lieutenant colonel.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the left front rank man of each company will face to the left, and rest his breast lightly against the right arm of his guide; the companies will wheel to the left on the principle of wheeling from a halt, each captain will turn to his company, to observe the execution of the movement, and, when the right of the company shall arrive at three paces from the line of battle, he will command :

1. Such company. 2. HALT.

The company being halted, the captain will place himself on the line by the side of the left front rank man of the company next on the right, align himself correctly, and command :

3 Right—DRESS.

At this command, the company will dress up between the captain and the front rank man on its left, the captain directing the alignment on that man; the front rank man on the right of the right company, who finds himself opposite

to its right guide, will lightly rest his breast against the left arm of this guide.

Each captain, having aligned his company, will command, **FRONT**, and the colonel will add :

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the guides will return to their places in line of battle, each passing through the nearest captain's interval; to permit him to pass, the captain will momentarily step before the first file of his company, and the covering sergeant behind the same file. *This rule is general for all the formations into line of battle.*

When companies form line of battle, file closers will always place themselves exactly two paces from the rear rank, which will sufficiently assure their alignment.

The battalion being correctly aligned, the colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, as well as the adjutant and sergeant major, will return to their respective places in line of battle. *This rule is general for all the formations into line of battle*; nevertheless, the battalion being in the school of elementary instruction, the colonel will go to any point he may deem necessary.

A column, with the left in front, will form itself *to the right into line of battle*, according to the same principles; the left guide of the left company will place himself, at the first command, on the direction of the right guides, in a manner corresponding to what is prescribed for the right guide of the right company, when wheeling to the left into line.

At the command *guides posts*, the captains will take their places in line of battle as well as the guides. *This rule is general for all formations into line of battle in which the companies are aligned by the left.*

A column in march will be formed into line, without halting, by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the guides will halt in their places, and the lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify their positions.

If, in forming the column into line, the colonel should wish to move forward, without halting, he will command :

1. *By companies left wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick—*
MARCH).

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot, as prescribed in the school of the company; the left guides will step back into the rank of file closers before the wheel is completed, and when the right of the companies shall arrive near the line, the colonel will command :

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide centre.*

At the fourth command, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will march directly to the front. At the fifth command, the color and the general guides will move rapidly six paces to the front. The colonel will assure the direction of the color; the captains of companies and the men will, at once, conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle, to be hereinafter indicated.

The same principles are applicable to a column left in front.

By Inversion to the Right (or Left) into Line of Battle.

When a column, right in front, shall be under the necessity of forming itself into line faced to the reverse flank, and the colonel shall wish to execute this formation by the shortest movement, he will command :

1. *By inversion, right into line, wheel.* 2. *Battalion, guide right.*

At the first command, the lieutenant colonel will place himself in front, and facing to the right guide of the lead-

ing subdivision; at the second command, he will rectify, as promptly as possible, the direction of the right guides of the column; the captain of the odd company, if there be one, and the column be fly division, will promptly bring the right of his company on the direction, and at company distance from the division next in front; the left guide of the leading subdivision will place himself on the direction of the right guides, and will be assured in his position by the lieutenant colonel; which being executed, the colonel will command:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this, the right front rank man of each subdivision will face to the right, rest his breast lightly against the left arm of his guide, and the battalion will form itself to the right into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed; which being executed, the colonel will command:

Guides—Posts.

If the column be with the left in front, it will form itself, by inversion, to the left into line, according to the same principles.

Successive Formations.

Under the denomination of successive formations are included all those formations where the several subdivisions of a column arrive one after another on the line of battle; such are formations on the right, or left, forward and faced to the rear into line of battle, as well as deployments of columns in mass.

The successive formations which may be ordered when the column is marching, and is to continue marching, will be executed by a combination of the two gaits, *quick* and *double quick* time.

2d. Column at Full Distance, on the Right (or on the Left), into Line of Battle.

A column by company, at full distance and right in front,

having to form itself on the right into line of battle, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant colonel a little in advance, the point of *appui*, or rest, for the right, as well as the point of direction to the left; the lieutenant colonel will hasten with two markers, and establish them in the following manner on the direction indicated.

The first marker will be placed at the point of *appui* for the right front rank man of the leading company; the second will indicate the point where one of the three left files of the same company will rest when in line; they will be placed so as to present the right shoulder to the battalion when formed.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

1. *On the right, into line.*
2. *Battalion, guide right.*

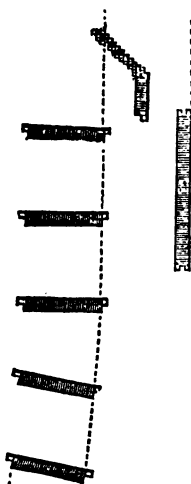


Fig. 52. On right into Line.

At the second command, the right will become the directing flank, and the touch of the elbow will be to that side; the right guide of the leading company will march straight forward until up with the turning point, and each following guide will march in the trace of the one immediately preceding.

The leading company being nearly up with the first marker, its captain will command : 1. *Right turn*, and when the company is precisely up with this marker, he will add : 2. *MARCH*.

At the command *march*, the company will turn to the right; the right guide will so direct himself as to bring the man next to him opposite to the right marker, and when at three paces from him, the captain will command :

1. *First company.* 2. **HALT.**

At the second command, the company will halt; the files, not yet in line, will form promptly; the left guide will retire as a file closer; and the captain will then command:

3. *Right—DRESS.*

At this command, the company will align itself; the two men who find themselves opposite to the two markers, will each lightly rest his breast against the right arm of his marker; the captain, passing to the right of the front rank, will direct the alignment on these two men. *These rules are general for all successive formations.*

The second company will continue to march straight forward; when arrived opposite to the left flank of the preceding company, it will turn to the right, and be formed on the line of battle, as has just been described; the right guide will direct himself so as to come upon that line by the side of the man on the left of the first company.

At the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the company will be halted by its captain, who will place himself briskly by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself correctly on its front rank.

The left guide will, at the same time, place himself before one of the three left files of his company, and, facing to the right, he will place himself accurately on the direction of the two markers of the preceding company.

The captain will then command:

Right—DRESS.

At this command, the second company will dress forward on the line; the captain will direct its alignment on the front rank man who has rested his breast against the left guide of the company.

The following companies will thus come successively to form themselves on the line of battle, each conforming it-

self to what has just been prescribed for the one next to the right; and when they shall all be established, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the guides will take their places in line of battle, and the markers placed before the right company will retire.

If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should wish to cause the movement to be executed in double quick time, he will add the command: *Double quick—MARCH.* At the command *march*, all the companies will take the double quick step, and the movement will be executed as prescribed for quick time.

The colonel will follow up the formation, passing along the front, and being always opposite to the company about to turn: it is thus that he will be the better able to see and to correct the error that would result from a command given too soon or too late to the preceding company.

The lieutenant colonel will, with the greatest care, assure the direction of the guides; to this end, the instant that the markers are established for the leading company, he will move a little beyond the point at which the left of the next company will rest, establish himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, and assure the guide of the second company on this direction; this guide being assured, the lieutenant colonel will place himself farther to the rear, in order to assure, in like manner, the guide of the third company, and so on, successively, to the left of the battalion. In assuring the guides in their positions on the line of battle, he will take care to let them first place themselves, and confine himself to rectifying their positions if they do not cover accurately, and at the proper distance, the preceding guides or markers. *This rule is general, for all successive formations.*

A column, left in front, will form itself on the left into line of battle according to the same principles: the captains will go to the left of their respective companies to align them, and shift afterwards to their proper flanks.

Remarks on the Formation on the Right, or Left, into Line of Battle.

Every captain will always observe, in placing himself on the line, not to give the command *dress*, until after the guide of his company shall have been assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel. *This rule is general for all successive formations.*

Each captain will cause his company to support arms, the instant that the captain, who follows him, shall have commanded *front*. *This rule is general for all successive formations.*

8d. Column at Full Distance, Forward into Line of Battle. (Fig 58.)

A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it forward into line, he will have the markers posted to indicate the line, and then command :

1. *Forward into line.* 2. *By company, left half wheel.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, the captain of the leading company will add—*guide right*, put the company in march, halt it three paces from the markers, and align it against the latter by the right.

At the command *march*, all the other companies will wheel to the left on fixed pivots; and, at the instant the colonel shall judge, according to the direction of the line of battle, that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command :

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right.*

At the fifth command, the companies, ceasing to wheel, will march straight forward; and at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right. The right guide of the

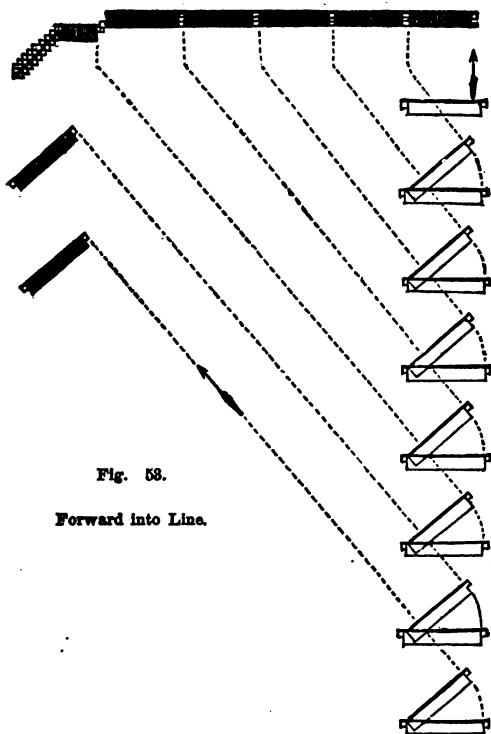


Fig. 58.

Forward into Line.

second company, who is nearest to the line of battle, will march straight forward; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel.

The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle; and when its right guide shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command :

1. *Second company.* 2. **HALT.**

At the second command, the company will halt; the files not yet in line with the guide will come into it promptly, the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, so as to be opposite to one of the three files on the left of the company; and, as soon as he is assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the captain, having placed himself accurately on the line of battle, will command:

3. *Right—DRESS.*

At the instant that the guide of the second company begins to turn to the right, the guide of the third, ceasing to follow the file immediately before him, will march straight forward; and, when he shall arrive opposite to the left of the second, his captain will cause the company to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle, halt it at three paces from that line, and align it by the right, as prescribed for the second company.

Each following company will execute what has just been prescribed for the third, as the preceding company shall turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle.

The formation ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

The colonel and lieutenant colonel will observe in this formation, what is prescribed for them on the right into line.

A column left in front, will form itself forward into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

When a column by company at full distance, right in front, and in march, shall arrive behind the right of the line on which it is to form into battle, the colonel and lieutenant colonel will establish the line.

The head of the column having arrived at company dis-

tance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward into line.*
2. *By company, left half wheel.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

* At the first command, the captain of the first company will command, *Guide right*, and caution it to march directly to the front, the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the left.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the first company will continue to march to the front, taking the touch of elbows to the right. Its chief will halt it at three paces from the markers, and align it by the right. The other companies will wheel to the left on fixed pivots, and at the instant the colonel shall judge that they have wheeled sufficiently, he will command :

4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Guide right.*

At the fifth command, the companies will cease to wheel and move forward. At the sixth, they will take the touch of elbows to the right. The movement will be executed as previously explained.

If the colonel should wish to form the column forward into line, and to continue to march in this order, he will not cause markers to be established; the movement will be executed in *double quick time*, by the same commands and means, but with the following modifications.

At the first command, the captain of the first company will add *quick time* after the command *guide right*. At the second command, the first company will continue to march in quick time, and will take the touch of elbows to the right; its chief will immediately place himself on its right, and to assure the march, will take points of direction to the front. The captain of the second company will cause his company to take the same gait as soon as it shall arrive on a line with the first, and will also move to the right of his company; the captains of the third and fourth companies

will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second. The companies will preserve the touch of elbows to the right, until the command, *guide centre*.

When the color company shall have entered the line, the colonel will command, *guide centre*. At this command, the color-bearer and the right general guide will move rapidly six paces in advance of the line. The colonel will assure the direction of the color-bearer. The lieutenant colonel and the right companies will immediately conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle. The left companies and the left general guide, as they arrive on the line, will also conform to the same principles. If the column be marching in double quick time, when the last company shall have arrived on the line, the colonel will cause the double quick to be resumed.

It is not necessary that the movement be entirely completed, before halting the battalion. As soon as the part of the battalion already formed shall have arrived on the line of battle, the colonel will halt the battalion; the companies not in line will each complete the movement.

Remarks on the Formation Forward, into Line of Battle.

If the angle formed by the line of battle and the primitive direction of the column be so acute, that the companies, on arriving opposite to their respective places on the line of battle, find themselves nearly parallel to it, the captains will not give the command *right* (or *left*) *turn*, but each halt his company, place himself on the line, and command :

Right (or *left*)—DRESS.

If, on the contrary, the angle formed by the line of battle and the primitive direction of the column be much greater than a right angle, the formation should be executed, not by the movement *forward into line of battle*, but by that of *on the right* (or *left*) *into line of battle*, and according to the principles prescribed for this formation.

If a company encounter an obstacle sufficient to prevent

it from marching by the front, it will *right* (or *left*) *face* in marching by the commands and means indicated in the school of the company. The guide will continue to follow the same file behind which he was marching and will maintain exactly the same distance from the company immediately preceding his own. The obstacle being passed, the company will be formed into line by the command of its captain.

4th. Column at Full Distance, Faced to the Rear, into Line of Battle. (Fig. 54.)

A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line faced to the rear, he and the lieutenant colonel will establish the position of the line, and the colonel will then command:

1. *Into line, faced to the rear.*
2. *Battalion, right—FACE.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the captain of the leading company will cause it to face to the right, and put it in march, causing it to wheel by file to the left, and direct its march towards the line of battle which it will pass in rear of the left marker; the first file having passed three paces beyond the line, the company will wheel again by file to the left, in order to place itself in rear of the two markers; being in this position, its captain will halt it, face it to the front, and align it by the right against the markers.

At the second command, all the other companies will face to the right, each captain placing himself by the side of his right guide.

At the command *march*, the companies will put themselves in movement; the left guide of the second, who is nearest to the line of battle, will hasten in advance to mark that line; he will place himself on it as prescribed above for successive formations, and thus indicate to his captain

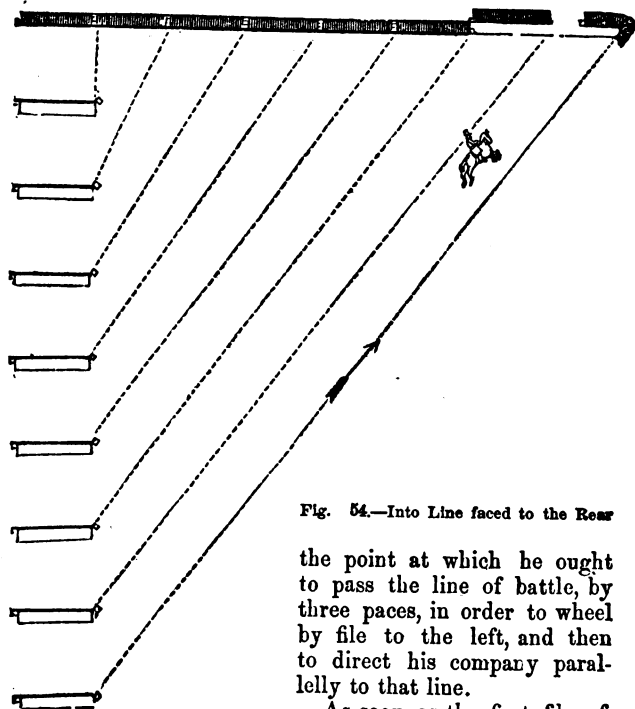


Fig. 54.—Into Line faced to the Rear

the point at which he ought to pass the line of battle, by three paces, in order to wheel by file to the left, and then to direct his company parallelly to that line.

As soon as the first file of this company shall have arrived near the left file of the preceding one already on the line of battle, the captain will command :

1. *Second company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Right—*
DRESS.

The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to take to reach the halting point.

At the second command, the company will halt.

At the third, the company will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, the latter will promptly close to the right; the captain will immediately place himself by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself on its front rank.

The fourth command will be executed as prescribed for the alignment of the second company in the formation on the right into line.

The following companies will be conducted and established on the line of battle as just prescribed for the second, each regulating itself by the one that precedes it; the left guides will detach themselves in time to precede their respective companies on the line by twelve or fifteen paces, and each place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three left files of his company, when in line. If the movement be executed in double quick time, the moment it is commenced, all the left guides will detach themselves at the same time from the column, and will move at a run, to establish themselves on the line of battle.

The formation ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

The colonel and lieutenant colonel, in this formation, will each observe what is prescribed for him in that *on the right, into the line of battle.*

A column, left in front, will form itself faced to the rear into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

If the column be in march, and should arrive in front of the right of the line on which it is to form into battle, the colonel and lieutenant colonel will establish the line, and when the head of the column shall be nearly at company distance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command :

1. *Into line, faced to the rear.*
2. *Battalion, by the right flank.*
3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the captains will caution their companies to face by the right flank.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains of companies, all the companies will face to the right; the first company will then wheel by file to the left, and be directed by its captain a little to the rear of the left marker; then pass three paces beyond the line, and wheel again by file to the left; having arrived on the line, the captain will halt the company, and align it by the right. The remaining part of the movement will be executed as heretofore explained.

The foregoing principles are applicable to a column, left in front.

As the companies approach the line of battle, it is necessary that their captains should so direct the march as to cross that line a little in rear of their respective guides, who are faced to the basis of the formation; hence each guide ought to detach himself in time to find himself correctly established on the direction before his company shall come up with him.

ARTICLE THIRD.

Formation in Line of Battle by Two Movements.

If a column by company, right in front, and at a halt, find itself in part on the line of battle, and the colonel should think proper to form line of battle before all the companies enter the new direction, the formation will be executed in the following manner:

It will be supposed that the column has arrived behind the line of battle, and that five companies have entered the new direction. The colonel having assured the guides of the first five companies on the direction, will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. *Three rear companies, forward into line.*

At the second command, the chief of each of the rear companies will command: *By company, left half wheel*; and the colonel will add:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves *to the left, into line of battle*, and the three last, *forward, into line of battle*, by the means prescribed for these respective formations; each captain of the three rear companies will, when his company shall have sufficiently wheeled, command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *To the left, and forward into line.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command, the captains of those companies which have not entered on the new direction, will command: *By company, left half wheel*. At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form left into line, and the last three forward into line, as prescribed for these respective formations. Those captains who form their companies forward into line will conform to what is prescribed for this formation from a halt.

If the colonel should wish, in forming the battalion into line, to march it immediately forward, he will command:

1. *By company to the left, and forward into line.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, each captain, whose company is not yet in the new direction, will command: 1. *By company,*

left half wheel; 2. *Double-quick*. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the companies not in the new direction will execute what is prescribed above for forming forward into line while marching; each of the other companies will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot, and when the right of these companies shall arrive on the line, the colonel will command:

3. *Forward*. 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide centre*.

The fifth command will be given when the color-bearer arrives on the line, if not already there.

If the battalion be marching in double quick time, the colonel will cause quick time to be taken before commencing the movement.

If, instead of arriving behind, the column should arrive before the line of battle, the colonel will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel*. 2. *Three rear companies into line, faced to the rear*.

At the second command, the captain of each of the three rear companies will command: 1. *Such company*; 2. *Right*—FACE. The colonel will then add:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves *to the left, into line of battle*, and the last three *faced to the rear, into line of battle*, by the means prescribed for these respective formations.

If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *To the left, and into line, faced to the rear*. 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

The movement will be executed as prescribed for the execution of the two movements separately.

These several movements in a column, left in front, will

be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

Different Modes of Passing from Column at Half Distance, into Line of Battle.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. To the left (or right) | } into line of battle. |
| 2. On the right (or left) | |
| 3. Forward, by deployment, | |
| 4. Faced to the rear, | |

1st. Column at Half Distance, to the Left (or Right) into Line of Battle.

A column at half distance having to form itself to the left (or right) into line of battle, the colonel will cause it to take distances by one of the means prescribed, which being executed, he will form the column into line of battle, as has been indicated for forming to the left into line of battle.

If a column by company, at half distance, be in march, and it be necessary to form rapidly into line of battle, the colonel will command:

1. *By the rear of column left (or right) into line, wheel.*
2. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the right general guide will move rapidly to the front, and place himself a little beyond the point where the head of the column will rest, and on the prolongation of the guides. The captain of the eighth company will command: *Left into line, wheel*; the other captains will caution their companies to continue to march to the front.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captain of the eighth company, the guide of this company will halt

short, and the company will wheel to the left, conforming to the principles prescribed for wheeling from a halt; when its right shall arrive near the line, the captain will halt the company and align it by the left. The other captains will place themselves briskly on the flank of the column; when the captain of the seventh sees there is sufficient distance between his company and the eighth to form the latter into line, he will command: *Left into line, wheel—MARCH*; the left guide will halt short, and facing to the rear, will place himself on the line; the company will wheel to the left, the man on the left of the front rank will face to the left, and place his breast against the left arm of the guide; the captain will halt the company when its right shall arrive near the line, and will align it by the left. The other companies will conform successively to what has just been prescribed for the seventh.

Each captain will direct the alignment of his company on the left man in the front rank of the company next on his right.

The lieutenant colonel will be watchful that the leading guide marches accurately on the prolongation of the line of battle, and directs himself on the right general guide. The major, placed in rear of the left guide of the eighth company, will, as soon as the guide of the seventh company is established on the direction, hasten in rear of the guides of the other companies, so as to assure each of them in succession on the line.

2d. Column at Half Distance, on the Right (or Left), into Line of Battle.

A column at half distance will form itself on the right (or left) into line of battle, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

3d. Column at Half Distance, Forward, into Line of Battle.

If it be wished to form a column at half distance, forward into line of battle, the colonel will first cause it to close in mass and then deploy it on the leading company.

4th. Column at Half Distance, Faced to the Rear, into Line of Battle.

A column at half distance will be formed into line of battle, faced to the rear, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

Deployment of Columns Closed in Mass.

A column in mass may be formed into line of battle:

1. Faced to the front, by the deployment.
2. Faced to the rear, by the countermarch and the deployment.
3. Faced to the right and faced to the left, by a change of direction by the flank, and the deployment.

When a column in mass, by division, arrives behind the line on which it is intended to deploy it, the colonel will indicate, in advance, to the lieutenant colonel, the direction of the line of battle, as well as the point on which he may wish to direct the column. The lieutenant colonel will immediately detach himself with two markers, and establish them on that line, the first at the point indicated, the second a little less than the front of a division from the first.

Deployments will always be made upon lines parallel, and lines perpendicular to the line of battle; consequently, if the head of the column be near the line of battle, the colonel will commence by establishing the direction of the column perpendicularly to that line. If the column be in march, he will so direct it that it may arrive exactly behind the markers, perpendicularly to the line of battle, and halt it at three paces from that line.

The column, right in front, being halted, it is supposed that the colonel wishes to deploy it on the first division; he will order the left general guide to go to a point on the line of battle a little beyond that at which the left of the battalion will rest when deployed, and place himself correctly on

the prolongation of the markers established before the first division.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, left—*
FACE.

At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three other divisions will remind them that they will have to face to the left.

At the second command, the three last divisions will face to the left; the chief of each division will place himself by the side of its left guide, and the junior captain by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company, who will have stepped into the front rank.

At the same command, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker on the alignment of the first two, opposite to one of the three left files of the right company, first division, and then place himself on the line of battle a few paces beyond the point at which the left of the second division will rest.

The colonel will then command :

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this command, the chief of the first division will go to its right, and command :

Right—DRESS.

At this, the division will dress up against the markers; the chief of the division, and its junior captain, will each align the company on his left, and then command :

FRONT.

The three divisions, faced to the left, will put themselves in march; the left guide of the second will direct himself

parallelly to the line of battle; the left guides of the third and fourth divisions will march abreast with the guide of the second; the guides of the third and fourth, each preserving the prescribed distance between himself and the guide of the division which preceded his own in the column.

The chief of the second division will not follow its movement; he will see it file by him, and when its right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

1. *Second division.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

The first command will be given when the division shall yet have seven or eight paces to march; the second, when the right guide shall be abreast with the chief of the division, and the third immediately after the second.

At the second command, the division will halt; at the third, it will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, the chief of the division will cause them to be promptly closed to the right; the left guides of both companies will step upon the line of battle, face to the right, and place themselves on the direction of the markers established before the first division, each guide opposite to one of the three left files of his company.

The division having faced to the front, its chief will place himself accurately on the line of battle, on the left of the first division; and when he shall see the guides assured on the direction, he will command, *Right—DRESS.* At this, the division will be aligned by the right in the manner indicated for the first.

The third and fourth divisions will continue to march; at the command *halt*, given to the second, the chief of the third will halt in his own person, place himself exactly opposite to the guide of the second, after this division shall have faced to the front and closed its files; he will see his division file past, and when his right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

1. *Third division.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

As soon as the division faces to the front, its chief will place himself two paces before its centre, and command :

1. *Third division, forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH.

At the third command, the division will march towards the line of battle; the right guide will so direct himself as to arrive by the side of the man on the left of the second division, and when the division is at three paces from the line of battle, its chief will halt it and align it by the right.

The chief of the fourth division will conform himself (and the chief of the fifth, if there be a fifth) to what has just been prescribed for the third.

The deployment ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the guides will resume their places in line of battle, and the markers will retire.

If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the first division without halting the column, he will establish the line, as in deploying from a halt, and when the first division shall have arrived at three paces from the line, he will command :

1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion by the left flank.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*). (Fig. 55.)

At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to halt, and will command, *First division*; the other chiefs will caution their divisions to face by the left flank.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the rear divisions, the chief of the first division will command, HALT, and will align his division by the right against

the markers; the other divisions will face to the left, their chiefs hastening to the left of their divisions. The second division will conform its movements to what is prescribed for executing this movement from a halt, as also the third and fourth divisions; but the chief of each division will halt in his own person at the command march given by the chief of the division which precedes him, and when the right of his division arrives abreast of him, he will command:

Such division, by the right flank—MARCH.

The lieutenant colonel will assure the position of the guides.

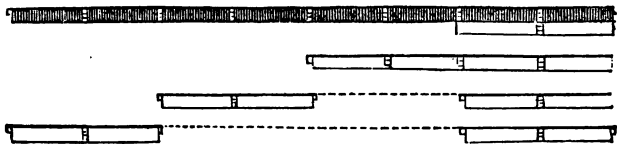


Fig. 55.—Deployment on first Division.

If the colonel shall wish to deploy the column without halting it, and to continue the march, the markers will not be posted; the movement will be executed by the same commands and the same means as the foregoing, but with the following modifications:

At the first command, the chief of the first division will command, 1. *Guide right.* 2. *Quick time.* At the command, *Double quick—MARCH*, given by the colonel, the first division will march in quick time and will take the touch of elbows to the right; the captains will place themselves on the right of their respective companies; the captain on the right of the battalion will take points on the ground to assure the direction of the march. The chief of the second division will allow his division to file past him, and when he sees its right abreast of him, he will command, 1. *Second division by the right flank.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide right*, and when this division shall arrive on the alignment of the first,

he will cause it to march in quick time. The third and fourth divisions will deploy according to the same principles as the second.

The colonel will see, pending the movement, that the principles just prescribed are duly observed, and particularly that the divisions, in deploying, be not halted too soon nor too late. He will correct promptly and quickly the faults that may be committed, and prevent their propagation. *This rule is general for all deployments.*

The column being at a halt, if, instead of deploying it on the first, the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the rearmost division, it will be the right general guide whom he will send to place himself beyond the point at which the right of the battalion will rest when deployed.

The colonel will then command:

1. *On the fourth (or such) division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion right—FACE.* (Fig. 56.)

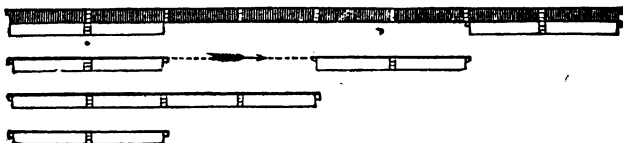


Fig. 56.—Deployment on fourth Division.

At the first command, the chief of the fourth division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the other divisions will caution them that they will have to face to the right.

At the second command, the first three divisions will face to the right; and the chief of each will place himself by the side of its right guide.

At the same command, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker between the first two, so that this marker may be opposite to one of the three right files of the left company of the division; the lieutenant colonel will then

place himself on the line of battle a few paces beyond the point at which the right of the third division will rest when deployed.

The colonel will then command :

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this command, the three right divisions will put themselves in march, the guide of the first so directing himself as to pass three paces within the line marked by the right general guide. The chief of the third division will not follow its movement; he will see it file past, halt it when its left guide shall be abreast with him, and cause it to face to the front; and, if there be openings between the files, he will cause them to be promptly closed to the left.

The chief of the fourth division, when he sees it nearly unmasked by the three others, will command :

1. *Fourth division, forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, which will be given the instant the fourth is unmasked, this division will approach the line of battle, and when at three paces from the markers on that line, its chief will halt it, and command :

Left—DRESS.

At this command, the division will dress forward against the markers; the chief of the division and the junior captain will each align the company on his right, and then command :

FRONT.

The instant that the third division is unmasked, its chief will cause it to approach the line of battle, and halt it in the manner just prescribed for the fourth.

The moment the division halts, its right guide and the covering sergeant of its left company will step on the line of battle, placing themselves on the prolongation of the

markers established in front of the fourth division ; as soon as they shall be assured in their positions, the division will be aligned as has just been prescribed for the fourth.

The second and first divisions which will have continued to march, will, in succession, be halted and aligned by the left, in the same manner as the third ; the chiefs of these divisions will conform themselves to what is prescribed for deploying on first division. The second being near the line of battle, the command will not be given for it to move on this line, but it will be dressed up to it.

The deployment ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the chiefs of division and the guides will resume their places in line of battle, and the markers will retire.

The lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides, and the major will follow the movement abreast with the fourth division.

If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the fourth division, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel the direction of the line of battle, who will make the necessary disposition ; and when the head of the column shall arrive within three paces of the line, he will command :

1. *On the fourth division, deploy column.*
2. *Battalion, by the right flank.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH.*

At the first command, the chief of the fourth division will caution it to halt, and will command, *Fourth division* ; the chiefs of the other divisions will caution their divisions to face to the right.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the first three divisions, the chief of the fourth will command : *HALT*. The first three divisions will face to the right, and be directed parallelly to the line of battle. The chief of each of these divisions will place himself by the

side of its right guide. The chief of the third division will see his division file past him, and when his left guide is abreast of him, he will halt it, and face it to the front. The chief of the fourth division, when he shall see it nearly unmasked, will command: 1. *Forward*; 2. *Guide left*; 3. *MARCH* (or *double quick*—*MARCH*). This division will move towards the line of battle, and when at three paces from this line, it will be halted by its chief, and aligned by the left.

The chief of the third division will move his division forward, conforming to what has just been prescribed for the fourth.

The chiefs of the second and first divisions, after halting their divisions, will conform to what is prescribed for deploying from a halt.

If the colonel should wish to deploy on the fourth division without halting the column, and to continue to march forward, he will not have markers posted, and the movement will be executed by the same commands and the same means, with the following modifications: the fourth division, when unmasked, will be moved forward in quick time, and will continue to march, instead of being halted, and will take the touch of elbows to the left. The third division, on being unmasked, will be moved to the front in double quick time, but when it arrives on the alignment of the fourth, it will take the quick step, and dress to the left until the command *Guide centre*, is given by the colonel. The chiefs of the second and first divisions will conform to what has been prescribed for the third. When the first division shall arrive on the line, the colonel may cause the battalion to take the double quick step.

To deploy the column on an interior division, the colonel will cause the line to be traced. This being executed, the colonel will command:

1. *On such division, deploy column.*
2. *Battalion outwards—FACE.*
3. *MARCH* (or *double quick*—*MARCH*). (Fig. 57.)

6. Whether the column be with the right or left in front

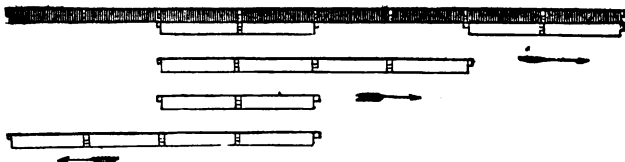


Fig. 57.—To Deploy on an interior Division.

the divisions which, in the order in battle, belong to the right of the directing one, will face to the right; the others, except the directing division, will face to the left; the divisions in front of the latter will deploy by the means indicated for deploying on fourth division; and those in rear by the means indicated for deployment on first division.

The directing division, the instant it finds itself unmasked, will approach the line of battle, taking the guide left or right, according as the right or left of the column may be in front. The chief of this division will align it by the directing flank, and then step back into the rear, in order momentarily to give place to the chief of the next for aligning the next division.

The lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides of divisions, which, in the line of battle, take the right of the directing division, and the major will assure the positions of the other guides.

If the column be in march, the colonel will command :

1. *On such division, deploy column.*
2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.*
3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

The movement will be executed by the means prescribed for deploying on an interior division, from a halt. The field officers conforming to what is there prescribed.

In a column, left in front, deployments will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

Remarks on the Deployment of Columns, Closed in Mass.

All the divisions ought to deploy rectangularly, to march

off abreast, and to preserve their distances towards the line of battle.

Each division, the instant that it is unmasked, ought to be marched towards the line of battle, and to be aligned upon it by the flank next to the directing division; the latter, whether the right or left be in front, will always be aligned by the flank next to the point of *appui*, when the deployment is made on the first or last division; but if the column be deployed on an interior division, this division will be aligned by the flank which *was* that of direction.

The chiefs of division will see that, in deploying, the principles prescribed for marching by the flank are well observed, and if openings between the files occur, which ought not to happen except on broken or difficult grounds, the openings ought to be promptly closed towards the directing flank as soon as the divisions face to the front.

If a chief of division give the command *halt*, or the command, *by the right or left flank*, too soon or too late, his division will be obliged to oblique to the right or left in approaching the line of battle, and his fault may lead the following subdivision into error.

In the divisions which deploy by the left flank, it is always the left guide of each company who ought to place himself on the line of battle, to mark the direction; in divisions which deploy by the right flank, it is the right guide.

A column by company, closed in mass, may be formed to the left or to the right into line, in the same manner as a column at half distance.

A column by company, closed in mass, may be formed on the right or on the left into line of battle, as a column at half distance; but in order to execute this movement, without arresting the march of the column, it is necessary that the guides avoid, with the greatest care, shortening the step in turning, and that the men near them, respectively, conform themselves rapidly to the movements of their guides.

Remarks on Inversions.

Inversions giving frequently the means of forming line of battle, in the promptest manner, are of great utility in the movements of an army.

They may be advantageously employed in the successive formations, except in that of *faced to the rear, into line of battle*.

Formations, by inversion, will be executed according to the same principles as formations in the direct order; but the colonel's first command will always begin by *inversion*.

The battalion being in line of battle by inversion, when the colonel shall wish, by forming it into column, to bring it back to the direct order, he will cause it either to *break* or to *ploy* by company, or by division, accordingly as the column may have been by company or by division before it had been formed into line of battle by inversion.

When a battalion in line of battle, formed by inversion, has to be ployed into column, the movement will be executed according to the same principles as if the line were in the direct order, but observing what follows.

If it be intended that the column shall be by division, with the first in front, or by company, with the first company in front, the colonel will announce in the second command—*left in front*, because the battalion being in line of battle by inversion, that subdivision is on the left.

Each chief whose subdivision takes position in the column in front of the directing one, will conduct his subdivision till it halts; and each chief whose subdivision takes position in rear of the directing one, will halt in his own person when up with the preceding right guide, and see his subdivision file past; and each chief will align his subdivision by the right. When the column is to be put in march the second command will be—*guide left*, because the proper right is in front.

For the same reason, if it be intended that the last subdivision shall be in front, *right in front*, will be announced in the second command; the subdivisions will be aligned by

the left, and to put the column in march, the second command will be *guide right*, because the proper left is in front.

PART FIFTH.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To Advance in Line of Battle. (Fig. 58.)

The battalion being correctly aligned, and supposed to be the directing one, when the colonel shall wish to march in line of battle, he will give the lieutenant colonel an intimation of his purpose, place himself about forty paces in rear of the color-file, and face to the front.

The lieutenant colonel will place himself a like distance in front of the same file, and face to the colonel, who will establish him as correctly as possible, by signal of the sword, perpendicularly to the line of battle opposite to the color-bearer. The colonel will next, above the heads of the lieutenant colonel and color-bearer, take a point of direction in the field beyond, if a distinct one present itself, exactly in the prolongation of those first two points.

The colonel will then move twenty paces farther to the rear, and establish two markers on the prolongation of the straight line passing through the color-bearer and the lieutenant colonel; these markers will face to the rear, the first placed about twenty-five paces behind the rear rank of the battalion, and the second at the same distance from the first.

The color-bearer will be instructed to take, the moment the lieutenant colonel shall be established on the perpendicular, two points on the ground in the straight line which, drawn from himself, would pass between the heels of that officer; the first of these points will be taken at fifteen or twenty paces from the color-bearer.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Battalion, forward.*

At this, the front rank of the color-guard will advance six paces to the front; the corporals in the rear rank will place themselves in the front rank, and these will be replaced by those in the rank of file closers; at the same time the two general guides will move in advance, abreast with the color-bearer, the one on the right, opposite to the captain of the right company, the other opposite to the sergeant who closes the left of the battalion.

The captains of the left wing will shift, passing before the front rank, to the left of their respective companies; the sergeant on the left of the battalion will step back into the rear rank. The covering sergeant of the company next on the left of the color-company, will step into the front rank.

The lieutenant colonel having assured the color-bearer on the line between himself and the corporal of the color-file, now in the front rank, will place himself twelve or fifteen paces on the right of the captain of the color-company.

The major will place himself six or eight paces on either flank of the color-rank.

The colonel will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At this command, the battalion will step off with life; the color-bearer, charged with the step and direction, will scrupulously observe the length and cadence of the pace, marching on the prolongation of the two points previously taken, and successively taking others in advance by the means indicated in the school of the company; the corporal on his right, and the one on his left, will march in the same step, taking care not to turn the head or shoulders, the color-bearer supporting the color-lance against the hip.

The two general guides will march in the same step with the color-rank, each maintaining himself abreast, or nearly so, with that rank, and neither occupying himself with the movement of the other.

The three corporals of the color-guard, now in the front rank of the battalion, will march well aligned, elbow to elbow, heads direct to the front, and without deranging the line of their shoulders; the centre one will follow exactly in the trace of the color-bearer, and maintain the same step, without lengthening or shortening it, except on an intimation from the colonel or lieutenant colonel, although he should find himself more or less than six paces from the color-rank.

The covering sergeant in the front rank between the color-company and the next on the left, will march elbow to elbow, and on the same line, with the three corporals in the centre, his head well to the front.

The captains of the color-company, and the company next to the left, will constitute, with the three corporals in the centre of the front rank, the basis of alignment for both wings of the battalion; they will march in the same step with the color-bearer, and exert themselves to maintain their shoulders exactly in the square with the direction. To this end, they will keep their heads direct to the front, only occasionally casting an eye on the three centre corporals, with the slightest possible turn of the neck, and if they perceive themselves in advance, or in rear of these corporals, the captain, or two captains, will almost insensibly shorten or lengthen the step, so as, at the end of several paces, to regain the true alignment, without giving sudden checks or impulsions to the wings beyond them respectively.

The lieutenant colonel, placed twelve or fifteen paces on the right of the captain of the color-company, will maintain this captain and the next one beyond, abreast with the three centre corporals; to this end, he will caution either to lengthen or to shorten the step as may be necessary, which the captain, or two captains, will execute as has just been explained.

All the other captains will maintain themselves on the prolongation of this basis; and, to this end, they will cast their eyes towards the centre, taking care to turn the neck but slightly, and not to derange the direction of their shoulders.

The captains will observe the march of their companies, and prevent the men from getting in advance of the line of captains; they will not lengthen or shorten step except when evidently necessary; because, to correct, with too scrupulous attention, small faults, is apt to cause the production of greater—loss of calmness, silence, and equality of step, each of which it is so important to maintain.

The men will constantly keep their heads well directed to the front, feel lightly the elbow towards the centre, resist pressure coming from the flank, give the greatest attention to the squareness of shoulders, and hold themselves always very slightly behind the line of the captains, in order never to shut out from the view of the latter the basis of alignment; they will, from time to time, cast an eye to the color-rank, or on the general guide of the wing, in order to march constantly in the same step with those advanced persons.

The colonel will habitually hold himself about thirty paces in rear of the centre of his battalion.

Point of Direction to the Right (or Left).

At this command, the major will hasten thirty or forty paces in advance of the color-rank, halt, face to the colonel, and place himself on the direction which the latter will indicate by signal of the sword; the corporal in the centre of the battalion will then direct himself upon the major, on a caution from the colonel, advancing, to that end, the opposite shoulder; the corporals on his right and left will conform themselves to his direction.

The color-bearer will also direct himself upon the major, advancing the opposite shoulder, the major causing him, at the same time, to incline to the right or left, until he shall exactly cover the corporal of his file; the color-bearer will then take points on the ground in this new direction.

The two general guides will conform themselves to the new direction of the color-rank.

The officer charged with observing the successive replacing of the markers in the rear of the centre, will esta-

blish them promptly on the new direction, taking for basis the color-bearer and the corporal of his file in the centre of the battalion: the colonel will verify the new direction of the markers.

The lieutenant colonel, from the position given, will see that the two centre companies, and successively all the others, conform themselves to the new direction of the centre, but without precipitancy or disorder; he will then endeavor to maintain that basis of alignment for the battalion, perpendicularly to the direction pursued by the color-bearer.

He will often observe the march of the two wings; and, if he discover that the captains neglect to conform themselves to the basis of alignment, he will recall their attention by the command—*captain of (such) company*, or *captains of (such) companies, on the line*—without, however, endeavoring too scrupulously to correct small faults.

The major on the flank of the color-rank will, during the march, place himself, from time to time, twenty paces in front of that rank, face to the rear, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the markers established behind the centre, in order to verify the exact march of the color-bearer on that line; he will rectify, if necessary, the direction of the color-bearer.



Fig. 58—Advance in Line of Battle.

Remarks on the Advance in Line of Battle.

If, in the exercises of detail, or courses of elementary instruction, the officers, sergeants, corporals, and men, have not been well confirmed in the principles of the position under arms, as well as in the length and cadence of the step, the march of the battalion in line will be floating, unsteady, and disunited.

If the color-bearer, instead of marching perpendicularly forward, pursue an oblique direction, the battalion will *slant*;

crowdings in one wing, and openings in the other, will follow, and these defects in the march, becoming more and more embarrassing in proportion to the deviation from the perpendicular, will commence near the centre.

It is then of the greatest importance that the color-bearer should direct himself perpendicularly forward, and that the basis of alignment should always be perpendicular to the line pursued by him.

If openings be formed, if the files crowd each other, if, in short, disorder ensue, the remedy ought to be applied as promptly as possible, but calmly, with few words, and as little noise as practicable.

The object of the general guides, in the march in line of battle is, to indicate to the companies near the flanks the step of the centre of the battalion, and to afford more facility in establishing the wings on the direction of the centre if they should be too much in the rear; hence the necessity that these guides should maintain the same step, and march abreast, or very nearly so, with the color-rank, which it will be easy for them to do by casting from time to time an eye on that rank.

If the battalion happen to lose the step, the colonel will recall its attention by the command, *to the*—STEP; captains and their companies will immediately cast an eye on the color-rank, or one of the general guides, and promptly conform themselves to the step.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Oblique March in Line of Battle.

The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to oblique, he will command :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command, the major will place himself in front of, and faced to the color-bearer.

At the command *march*, the whole battalion will take the oblique step. The companies and captains will strictly observe the principles established in the school of the company.

The major in front of the color-bearer ought to maintain the latter in a line with the centre corporal, so that the color-bearer may oblique neither more nor less than that corporal. He will carefully observe also that they follow parallel directions and preserve the same length of step.

The lieutenant colonel will take care that the captains and the three corporals in the centre keep exactly on a line and follow parallel directions.

The colonel will see that the battalion preserves its parallelism; he will exert himself to prevent the files from opening or crowding. If he perceive the latter fault, he will cause the files on the flank, to which the battalion obliques, to open out.

The colonel, wishing the direct march to be resumed, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the battalion will resume the direct march. The major will place himself thirty paces in front of the color-bearer, and face to the colonel, who will establish him, by a signal of the sword, on the direction which the color-bearer ought to pursue. The latter will immediately take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

In resuming the direct march, care will be taken that the men do not close the intervals which may exist between the files at once; it should be done almost insensibly.

Remarks on the Oblique March.

The object of the oblique step is to gain ground to the right or left, preserving all the while the primitive direction of the line of battle.

It is then essential that the corporals in the centre of the battalion, and the captains of companies, should follow par-

allel directions, and maintain themselves at the same height; without which they will give a false direction to the battalion.

The colonel and lieutenant colonel will exert themselves to prevent the files from crowding; for, without such precaution, the oblique march cannot be executed with facility.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To Halt the Battalion, Marching in Line of Battle, and to Align it.

The battalion, marching in the line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command :

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT.

At the second command the battalion will halt; the color rank and the general guides will remain in front; but if the colonel should not wish immediately to resume the advance in line, nor to give a general alignment, he will command :

Color and general guides—POSTS.

At this command the color rank and general guides will retake their places in line of battle, the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

If the colonel should then judge it necessary to rectify the alignment, he will command :

Captains, rectify the alignment.

The captains will immediately cast an eye towards the centre, align themselves accurately, on the basis of the alignment, which the lieutenant colonel will see well directed, and then promptly dress their respective companies. The lieutenant colonel will admonish such captains as may

not be accurately on the alignment by the command: *Captain of (such) company, or captains of (such) companies, move up or fall back.*

But when the colonel shall wish to give the battalion a general alignment, either parallel or oblique, instead of rectifying it as above, he will move some paces outside of one of the general guides, (the right will be here supposed,) and caution the right general guide and color-bearer to face him, and then establish them by signal of the sword on the direction which he may wish to give to the battalion. As soon as they shall be correctly established, the left general guide will place himself on their direction, and be assured in his position by the major. The color-bearer will carry the color-lance perpendicularly between his eyes, and the two corporals of his rank will return to their places in the front rank the moment he shall face to the colonel.

This disposition being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Guides—ON THE LINE.* (Fig. 59.)

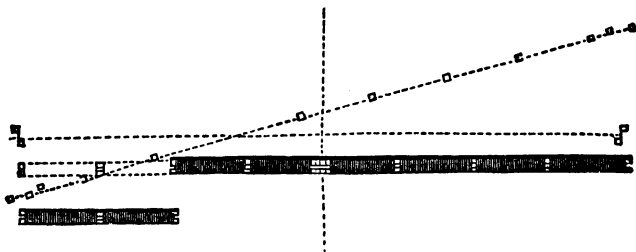


Fig. 59.—To Rectify the Alignment. Guides on the Line.

At this command, the right guide of each company in the right wing, and the left guide of each company in the left, will each place himself on the direction of the color-bearer and the two general guides, face to the color-bearer, place himself in the rear of the guide who is next before him at a distance equal to the front of his company, and align himself upon the color-bearer and the general guide beyond.

The captains of the right wing will shift to the left of their companies, except the captain of the color-company, who will remain on its right, but step into the rear rank; the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

The lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify, if necessary, the positions of the guides of the right wing, and the major those of the other; which being executed, the colonel will command:

2. *On the centre*—DRESS.

At this command, the companies will move up in quick time against the guides, where, having arrived, each captain will align his company according to prescribed principles, the lieutenant colonel aligning the color-company.

If the alignment be oblique, the captains will take care to conform their companies to it in conducting them towards the line.

The battalion being aligned, the colonel will command:

3. *Color and guides*—POSTS.

At this command, the color-bearer, the general and company guides, and the captains in the right wing, will take their places in the line of battle, and the color-bearer will replace the heel of the color-lance against the right hip.

If the new direction of the line of battle be such that one or more companies find themselves in advance of that line, the colonel, before establishing the general guides on the line, will cause such companies to be moved to the rear, either by the back step, or by first facing about, according as there may be less or more ground to be repassed to bring the companies in rear of the new direction.

When the colonel shall wish to give a general alignment, and the color and general guides are not on the line, he will cause them to move out by the command:

1. *Color and general guides*—ON THE LINE.

At this command, the color-bearer and the general guides

will place themselves on the line, conforming to what is prescribed for rectifying the alignment.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

Change of Direction in Marching in Line of Battle.

(Fig. 60.)

The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish it to change direction to the right, he will command :

1. *Change direction to the right.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick* —MARCH).

At the command *march*, the movement will commence; the color-rank will shorten the step to fourteen or seventeen inches, and direct itself circularly to the right, taking care to advance the left shoulder, but only insensibly; the major

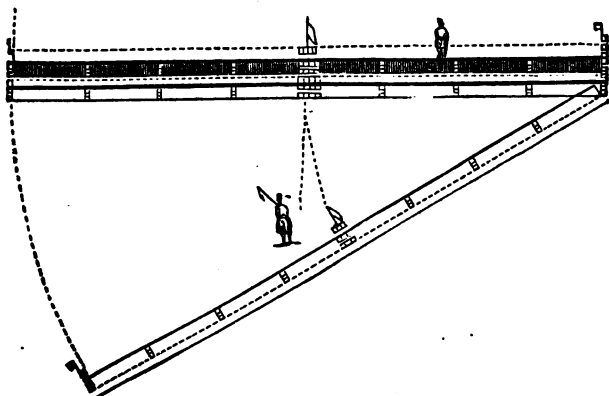


Fig. 60.—To Change Direction while Marching in Line of Battle.

will place himself before the color-bearer, facing him, and so direct his march that he may form an arc of a circle neither too large nor too small; he will also see that the color-bearer takes steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, according to the gait.

The right general guide will wheel on the right captain of the battalion as his pivot; the left general guide will circularly march in the step of twenty-eight inches or thirty-three inches, according to the gait, and will align himself upon the color-bearer and the right general guide.

The corporal placed in the centre of the battalion will take steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, and will wheel to the right by advancing insensibly to the left shoulder; the battalion will conform itself to the movement of the centre; to this end, the captain of the color-company, and the captain of the next to the left, will attentively regulate their march, as well as the direction of their shoulders, on the three centre corporals. All the other captains will regulate the direction of their shoulders and the length of their step on this basis.

The men will redouble their attention in order not to pass the line of captains.

In the left wing the pace will be lengthened in proportion as the file is distant from the centre; the captain of the eighth company, who closes the left flank of the battalion, will take steps of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

In the right wing the pace will be shortened in proportion as the file is distant from the centre; the captain who closes the right flank will only slowly turn in his person, observing to yield ground a little if pushed.

The colonel will take great care to prevent the centre of the battalion from describing an arc of a circle, either too great or too small, in order that the wings may conform themselves to its movement. He will see also that the captains keep their companies constantly aligned upon the centre, so that there may be no opening and no crowding of files. He will endeavor to prevent faults, and, should they occur, correct them without noise.

The lieutenant colonel, placed before the battalion, will give his attention to the same objects.

When the colonel shall wish the direct march resumed, he will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the color-rank, the general guides, and the battalion will resume the direct march; the major will immediately place himself thirty or forty paces in front, face to the colonel, placed in rear of the centre, who will establish him by signal of the sword on the perpendicular direction which the corporal in the centre of the battalion ought to pursue; the major will immediately cause the color-bearer, if necessary, to incline to the right or left, so as to be exactly opposite to his file; the color-bearer will then take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

The lieutenant colonel will endeavor to give to the color-company and the next on the left a direction perpendicular to that pursued by the centre corporal; and all the other companies, without precipitancy, will conform themselves to that basis.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

To March in Retreat, in Line of Battle.

The battalion being halted, if it be the wish of the colonel to cause it to march in retreat, he will command :

1. *Face to the rear.* 2. *Battalion, about*—FACE.

At the second command the battalion will face about; the color-rank and the general guides, if in advance, will take their places in line; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, now leading; the corporal of his file will step behind the corporal next on his own right to let the color-

bearer pass, and then step into the front rank, now rear, to reform the color-file; the colonel will place himself behind the front rank, become the rear; the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves before the rear rank, now leading.

The colonel will take post forty paces behind the color-file, in order to assure the lieutenant colonel on the perpendicular, who will place himself at a like distance in front, as prescribed for the advance in the line of battle.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

3. *Battalion, forward.*

At this command the color-bearer will advance six paces beyond the rank of file-closers, accompanied by the two corporals of his guard of that rank, the centre corporal stepping back to let the color-bearer pass; the two file-closers nearest this centre corporal will unite on him behind the color-guard to serve as a basis of alignment for the line of file-closers; the two general guides will place themselves abreast with the color-rank, the covering sergeants will place themselves in the line of file-closers, and the captains in the rear rank, now leading; the captains in the left wing, now right, will, if not already there, shift to the left of their companies, now become the right.

The colonel will then command :

4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

The battalion will march in retreat on the same principles which govern the advance in line; the centre corporal behind the color-bearer will march exactly in his trace.

If it be the directing battalion, the color-bearer will direct himself on the markers, who will, of their own accord, each place himself in succession behind the marker most distant, on being approached by the battalion; the officer charged with the superintendence of the markers will carefully assure them on the direction.

In the case of a subordinate battalion, the color-bearer will maintain himself on the perpendicular by means of points taken on the ground.

The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major will each discharge the same functions as in the advance in line.

The lieutenant colonel, placed on the outside of the file-closers of color-company, will also maintain the three file-closers of the basis of alignment in a square with the line of direction; the other file-closers will keep themselves aligned on this basis.

ARTICLE SIXTH.

To Halt the Battalion Marching in Retreat, and to Face it to the Front.

The colonel having halted the battalion, and wishing to face it to the front, will command :

1. *Face to the front.*
2. *Battalion, about—FACE.*

At the second command, the color-rank, general guides, captains, and covering sergeants, will all retake their habitual places in line of battle, and the color-bearer will re-pass into the front rank.

The battalion marching in line of battle by the front rank, when the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command :

1. *Battalion, right about.*
2. *MARCH.*

At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the rear and move off at the same gait by the rear rank.

If the colonel should wish the battalion to march again by the-front, he will give the same commands.

ARTICLE SEVENTH.

Change of Direction in Marching in Retreat.

A battalion retiring in line will change direction by the commands and means indicated for change of direction advancing to the front; the three file-closers, united behind the color-rank, will conform themselves to the movement of this rank, and wheel like it; the centre file-closer of the three will take steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, according to the gait, and keep himself steadily at the same distance from the color-bearer; the line of file-closers will conform themselves to the movement of its centre, and the lieutenant colonel will maintain it on that basis.

ARTICLE EIGHTH.

Passage of Obstacles, Advancing, and Retreating.

The battalion advancing in line will be supposed to encounter an obstacle which covers one or more companies; the colonel will cause them to ploy into column at full distance, in rear of the next company towards the color, which will be executed in the following manner. It will be supposed that the obstacle only covers the third company, the colonel will command:

Third company, obstacle. (Fig. 61.)

At this command the captain of the third company will place himself in its front, turn to it, and command, 1. *Third company, by the left flank, to the rear into column.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. *MARCH.* He will then hasten to the left of his company.

At the command *march*, the company will face to the left in marching; the two left files will promptly disengage to the rear in double quick time; the left guide, placing

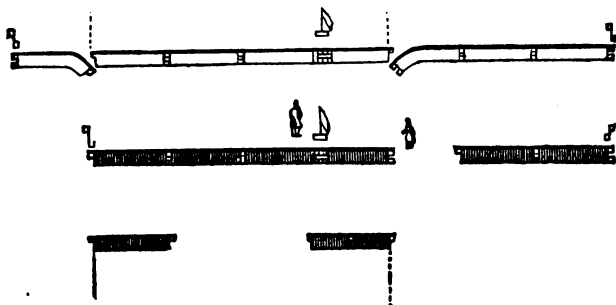


Fig. 61.—Passage of Obstacle. Third and eighth Companies Obstacle.

himself at the head of the front rank, will conduct it behind the fourth company, directing himself parallelly with this company; the captain of the third will himself halt opposite to the captain of the fourth, and see his company file past; when its right file shall be nearly up with him, he will command, 1. *Third company.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. *MARCH.* 4. *Guide right,* and place himself before the centre of his company.

At the command *march*, the company will face to the right, preserving the same gait, but the moment it shall be at the prescribed distance, its captain will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. *MARCH.*

This company will thus follow in column that behind which it finds itself, and at wheeling distance, its right guide marching exactly in the trace of the captain of that company.

As soon as the third company shall have faced to the left, the left guide of the second will place himself on the left of the front rank of his company, and maintain between himself and the right of the fourth the space necessary for the return into line of the third.

The obstacle being passed, the colonel will command:

Third company, forward into line. (Fig. 62.)

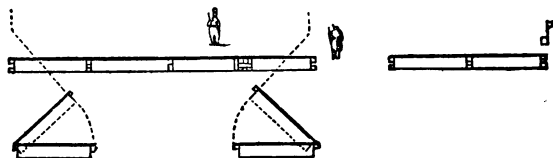


Fig. 62.—Third and eighth Companies forward into Line.

At this command, the captain turning to his company, will add :

1. *By company, right half wheel.* 2. *Double quick.*
3. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the company will take the double quick step, and execute a half wheel; its captain will then command, 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.* The second command will be given when the company shall have sufficiently wheeled.

At the command *march*, the company will direct itself straight forward towards the line of battle, and retake its position in it according to the principles prescribed for the formation forward into line of battle.

It will be supposed that the obstacle covers several contiguous companies (the three companies on the right for example), the colonel will command :

1. *Three right companies, obstacle.* 2. *By the left flank, to the rear, into column.* 3. *Double quick—MARCH.*

(Fig. 63.)

At the first command, the captain of the designated companies will each place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it as to the movement about to be executed.

At the command *march* the designated companies will

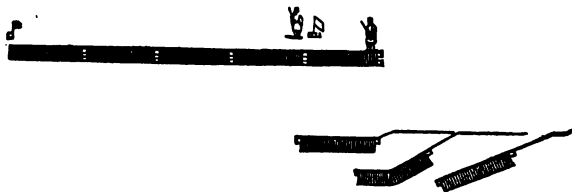


Fig. 63.—Three right Companies Obstacle.

face to the left in marching, and immediately take the double quick step; each captain will cause the head of his company to disengage itself to the rear, and the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the captain of the third company will conform himself to what is prescribed for passage of obstacle by the third company; the captains of the other companies will conduct them by the flank in the rear of the third, inclining towards the head of the column; and, as the head of each company arrives opposite to the right of the one next before it in column, its captain will himself halt, see his company file past, and conform himself for facing it to the front, in marching, to what is prescribed for third company when passing obstacle.

When the last company in column shall have passed the obstacle, the colonel will command:

1. *Three right companies, forward, into line.* (Fig. 64.)

At this command, the captain of each of these three companies will command, *By company, right half wheel.* The colonel will then add:

1. *Double quick.* 2. *MARCH.*

At this, briskly repeated by the captains of the three companies, each company will conform itself to what is prescribed for a single company.

It is supposed, in the foregoing examples, that the companies belonged to the right wing; if they make part of the

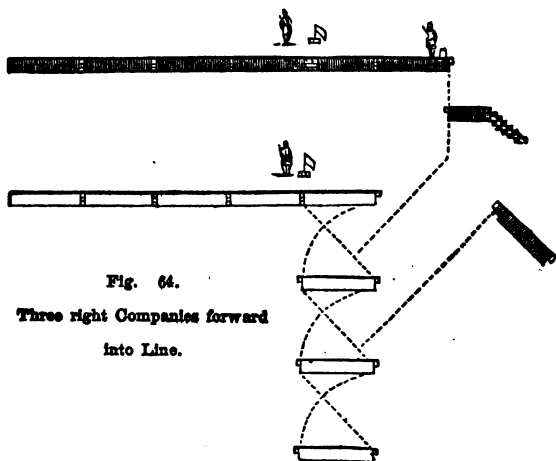


Fig. 64.

Three right Companies forward
into Line.

other, they will execute the passage of an obstacle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

When flank companies are broken off to pass an obstacle, the general guide on that flank will place himself six paces in front of the outer file of the nearest company to him remaining in line.

In the preceding movements it has been supposed that the battalion was marching in quick time, but if it be marching in double quick time, and the colonel shall wish to cause several contiguous companies to break to the rear, he will first order the battalion to march in quick time.

When the movement is completed, the colonel will order the double quick step to be resumed. He will also cause the battalion to march in quick time when he shall wish to bring into line the several companies which are to the rear in column; the movement will be executed as previously indicated; and when the last company shall have nearly completed its movement, the colonel will cause the double quick step to be resumed.

In the movement of a single company, or of several com-

panies not contiguous to each other, the battalion will continue to march in double quick time, but in these cases the companies which are to ploy into column, or re-enter the line, will increase the gait.

In the march in retreat, these several movements will be executed on the same principles as if the battalion marched by the front rank.

When a battalion, advancing in line of battle, shall be obliged to execute the right about in order to retreat, if there be companies in column, behind the rear rank, these companies will also execute the right about, put themselves in march at the same time with the battalion, and will thus precede it in the retreat; they will afterwards successively put themselves into line by the oblique step, as the ground may permit.

If the battalion be marching in retreat in double quick time, and many contiguous companies be marching before the rear rank of the battalion, the colonel will not change the gait of the battalion in causing them to re-enter into line.

When the color-company shall be obliged to execute the movement of passing an obstacle, the color-rank will return into line at the moment the company shall face to the left or right; the major will place himself six paces before the extremity of the company behind which the color-company marches in column, in order to give the step and the direction; he, himself, first taking the step from the battalion.

As soon as the color-company shall have returned into line, the front rank of the color-guard will again move out six paces in front of the battalion, and take the step from the major; the latter will immediately place himself twenty or thirty paces in front of the color-bearer, and face to the colonel, placed behind the centre of the battalion, who will establish him on the perpendicular; and, as soon as he shall be assured on it, the color-bearer will instantly take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

It is prescribed, as a general rule, that the companies of the right wing ought to execute the movement of passing obstacles by the left flank and the reverse for the companies

of the other wing; but if the obstacle cover at once several companies of the centre, each will file into column behind that, still in line, and of the same wing, which may be the nearest to it.

ARTICLE NINTH.

To Pass a Defile, in Retreat, by the Right or Left Flank.

(Fig. 65.)

When a battalion, retiring in line, shall encounter a defile which it must pass, the colonel will halt the battalion, and face it to the front.

It will be supposed that the defile is in the rear of the left flank, and that its width is sufficient to give passage to a column by platoon; the colonel will place a marker fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the file-closers at the point around which the subdivisions will have to change direction in order to enter the defile; he will then command:

To the rear, by the right flank, pass the defile.

The captain of the first company will immediately command:

1. *First company, right—FACE.*
2. *MARCH (or double quick —MARCH).*

At the command *march*, the first company will commence the movement; the first file will wheel to the right, march to the rear till it shall have passed four paces beyond the file-closers, when it will wheel again to the right, and then direct itself straight forward towards the left flank. All the other files of this company will come to wheel in succession at the same place where the first had wheeled.

The second company will execute, in its turn, the same movement, by the commands of its captain, who will give

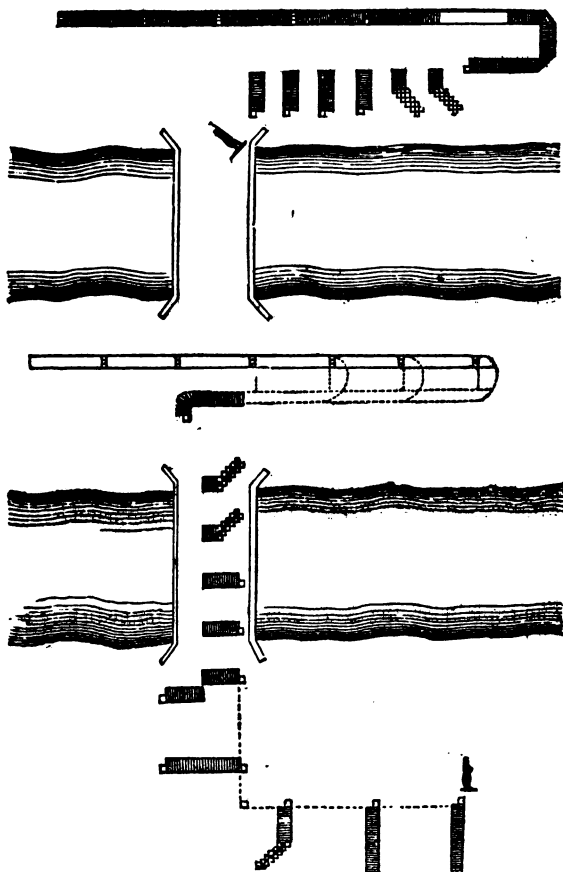


Fig. 65.—To the Rear by the right Flank Pass the Defile.

the command, MARCH, so that the first file of his company may immediately follow the last of the first, without constraint, however, as to taking the step of the first; the first

file of the second company will wheel to the right, on its ground; all the other files of this company will come in succession to wheel at the same place. The following companies will execute, each in its turn, what has just been prescribed for the second.

When the whole of the second company shall be on the same direction with the first, the captain of the first will cause it to form, by platoon, into line, and the moment that it is in column the guide of the first platoon will direct himself on the marker around whom he has to change direction in order to enter the defile.

The second company will continue to march by the flank, directing itself parallelly with the line of battle; and it, in its turn, will form by platoon into line, when the third company shall be wholly on the same direction with itself.

The following companies will successfully execute what has just been prescribed for the second, and each will form by platoon into line, when the next company shall be on the same direction with itself.

The first platoon of the leading company having arrived opposite the marker placed at the entrance of the defile, will turn to the left, and the following platoons will all execute this movement at the same point. As the last companies will not be able to form platoons before reaching the defile, they will so direct themselves, in entering it, as to leave room to the left for this movement.

The battalion will thus pass the defile by platoon; and, as the two platoons of each company shall clear it, companies will be successively formed.

The head of the column having cleared the defile, and having reached the distance at which the colonel wishes to reform line faced to the defile, he may cause the leading company to turn to the left, to prolong the column in that direction, and then form it to the left into the line of battle; or he may halt the column and form it into line of battle, faced to the rear.

If the defile be in the rear of the right flank it will be passed by the left; the movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

If the defile be too narrow to receive the front of a platoon it will be passed by the flank. Captains and file-closers will be watchful that the files do not lose their distances in marching. Companies or platoons will be formed into line as the width of the defile may permit, or as the companies shall successively clear it.

ARTICLE TENTH.

To March by the Flank. (Fig. 66.)

The colonel, wishing the battalion to march by the flank, will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Right (or left)—FACE.* 3. *Forward.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, the captains and covering sergeants will place themselves as prescribed in the school of the company.

The sergeant on the left of the battalion will place himself to the left and by the side of the last file of his company, covering the captains in file.

The battalion having to face by the left flank, the captains, at the second command, will shift rapidly to the left of their companies, and each place himself by the side of the covering sergeant of the company preceding his own, except the captain of the left company, who will place himself by the side of the sergeant on the left of the battalion. The covering sergeant of the right company will place himself by the right side of the front rank man of the rearmost file of his company, covering the captains in file.

At the command *march*, the battalion will step off with life; the sergeant, placed before the leading file (right or left in front), will be careful to preserve exactly the length and cadence of the step, and to direct himself straight forward; to this end he will take points on the ground.

Whether the battalion march by the right or left flank, the lieutenant colonel will place himself abreast with the leading file, and the major abreast with the color-file, both on the side of the front rank, and about six paces from it.

The adjutant, placed between the lieutenant colonel and the front rank, will march in the same step with the head of the battalion, and the sergeant major, placed between the major and the color-bearer, will march in the same step with the adjutant.

The captains and file-closers will carefully see that the files neither open out, nor close too much, and that they regain insensibly their distances, if lost.

The colonel, wishing the battalion to wheel by file, will command :

1. *By file right (or left).* 2. MARCH.

The files will wheel in succession, and all at the place where the first had wheeled, in conforming to the principles prescribed in the school of the company.

The battalion marching by the flank, when the colonel shall wish it to halt, he will command :

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

These commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the company.

If the battalion be marching by the flank, and the colonel should wish to cause it to march into line, either to the front or to the rear, the movements will be executed by the commands and means prescribed in the school of the company.

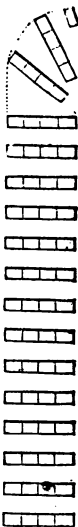


Fig. 66.—To March by the Flank forming Fours.

ARTICLE ELEVENTH.

To Form the Battalion on the Right or Left, by File, into Line of Battle.

The battalion marching by the right flank, when the colonel shall wish to form on the right by file, he will determine the line of battle, and the lieutenant colonel will place two markers on that line.

The head of the battalion being nearly up with the first marker, the colonel will command :

1. *On the right, by file, into line.* 2. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the command *march*, the leading company will form itself on the right, by file, into line of battle, as indicated in the school of the company ; the front rank man of the first file will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of the first marker ; the other companies will follow the movement of the leading company ; each captain will place himself on the line at the same time with the front rank man of his first file, and on the right of this man.

The left guide of each company, except the leading one, will place himself on the direction of the markers, and opposite to the left file of his company, at the instant that the front rank man of this file arrives on the line.

The formation being ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

The colonel will superintend the successive formation of the battalion, moving along the front of the line of battle.

The lieutenant colonel will, in succession, assure the direction of the guides, and see that the men of the front rank, in placing themselves on the line, do not pass it.

If the battalion march by the left flank, the movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

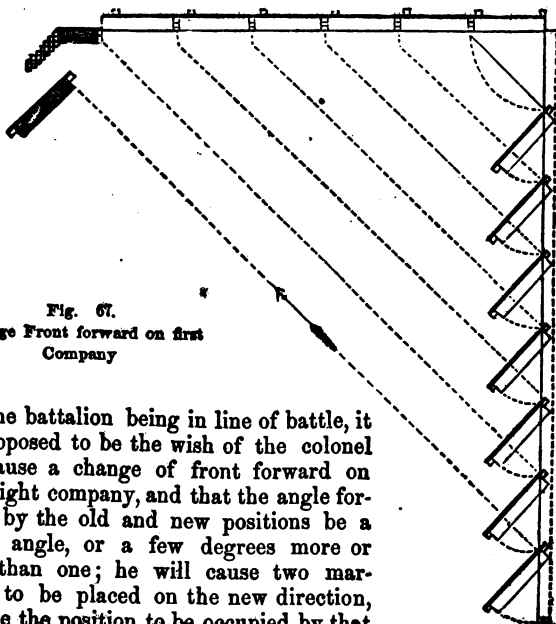
ARTICLE TWELFTH.

Changes of Front.

Change of Front Perpendicularly Forward. (Fig. 67.)

Fig. 67.
Change Front forward on first
Company

The battalion being in line of battle, it is supposed to be the wish of the colonel to cause a change of front forward on the right company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, or a few degrees more or less than one; he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and order its captain to establish it against the markers.



The captain of the right company will immediately direct it upon the markers by a wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; and after having halted it, he will align it by the right.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Change front forward on first company.*
2. *By company, right half wheel.*
3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the second command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company.

At the third, each company will wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; the left guide of each will place himself on its left as soon as he shall be able to pass; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

4. *Forward.*
5. **MARCH.**
6. *Guide right.*

At the fifth command, the companies ceasing to wheel will march straight forward; at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right.

The right guide of the second company will march straight forward until this company shall arrive at the point where it should turn to the right; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel, and will march in the trace of this file until this company shall turn to the right to move upon the line; this guide will then march straight forward.

The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right; the right guide will direct himself so as to arrive squarely upon the line of battle, and when he shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command:

1. *Second company.*
2. **HALT.**

At the second command the company will halt; the files not yet in line with the guide will come into it promptly; the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, and as

soon as he is assured in the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the captain will align the company by the right.

Each following company will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second.

The formation ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—POSTS.

If the battalion be in march, and the colonel shall wish to change front forward on the first company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and will command :

1. *Change front forward on first company.*
2. *By company, right half wheel.*
3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

At the first command, the captains will move rapidly before the centre of their respective companies; the captain of the first company will command: *Right turn*; 2. *Quick time*; the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the right.

At the command *march*, the first company will turn to the right, according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier; its captain will halt it at three paces from the markers, and the files in rear will promptly come into line. The captain will align the company by the right.

Each of the other companies will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot; the left guides will place themselves on the left of their respective companies, and when the colonel shall judge they have wheeled sufficiently, he will command :

4. *Forward.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Guide right.*

The colonel will cause the battalion to change front forward on the eighth company, according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

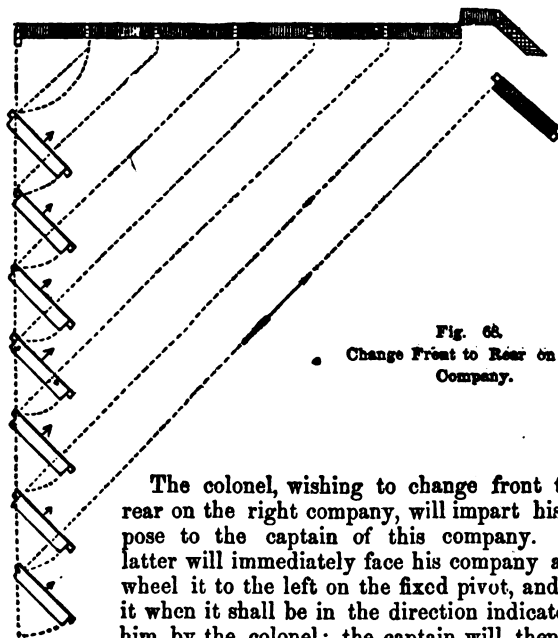
Change of Front Perpendicularly to the Rear. (Fig. 68.)

Fig. 68.
Change Front to Rear on first Company.

The colonel, wishing to change front to the rear on the right company, will impart his purpose to the captain of this company. The latter will immediately face his company about, wheel it to the left on the fixed pivot, and halt it when it shall be in the direction indicated to him by the colonel; the captain will then face his company to the front, and align it by the right against the two markers, whom the colonel will cause to be established before the right and left files.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command :

1. *Change front to the rear, on first company.* 2. *Battalion, about—FACE.* 3. *By company, left half wheel.* 4. *MARCH (or double, quick—MARCH).*

At the second command all the companies, except the right, will face about.

At the third, the captains, whose companies have faced about, will each place himself behind the centre of his company, two paces from the front rank, now the rear.

At the fourth, these companies will wheel to the left on the fixed pivot by the rear rank; the left guide of each will, as soon as he is able to pass, place himself on the left of the rear rank of his company, now become the right; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have wheeled sufficiently, he will command:

5. *Forward.* 6. MARCH. 7. *Guide left.*

At the sixth command the companies will cease to wheel march straight forward towards the new line of battle, and, at the seventh, take the touch of the elbow towards the left.

The second company, from the right, having arrived opposite to the left of the first, will turn to the left; the guide will so direct himself as to arrive parallelly with the line of battle, cross that line, and when the front rank, now in the rear, shall be three paces beyond it, the captain will command; 1. *Second company*; 2. HALT.

At the second command the company will halt; the files which may not yet be in line with the guide will promptly come into it; the captain will cause the company to face about, and then align it by the right.

All the other companies will execute what has just been prescribed for the second, each as it successively arrives opposite to the left of the company that precedes it on the new line of battle.

The formation being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

The colonel will cause a change of front on the left company of the battalion to the rear, according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

In changes of front, the colonel will give a general superintendence to the movement.

The lieutenant colonel will assure the direction of the guides as they successively move out on the line of battle, conforming himself to what has been prescribed in the successive formations.

Remarks on Changes of Front.

When the new direction is perpendicular, or nearly so, to that of the battalion, the companies ought to make about a *half wheel* (the eighth of a circle) before marching straight forward; but when those two lines are oblique to each other, the smaller the angle which they form the less ought the companies to wheel. It is for the colonel to judge, according to the angle, the precise time at which he ought to give the command *march*, after the caution *forward*, and if he cannot catch the exact moment, the word of execution should rather be given a little too soon than instant too late.

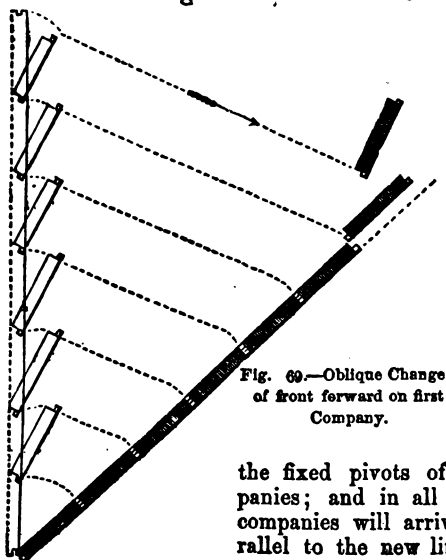


Fig. 69.—Oblique Change of front forward on first Company.

When the old and new lines form an angle of forty-five or fewer degrees, the colonel will find it necessary to arrest the wheel of the companies when the marching flanks shall have taken but a few paces, or, it may be, have but disengaged, respectively, from

the fixed pivots of the next companies; and in all such cases, the companies will arrive so nearly parallel to the new line as to be able

to align themselves upon it without the intermediate turn to the right or left; to execute the movement under either circumstance supposed, the colonel will command:

Oblique change of front, forward (or to the rear) on (such company). (Fig. 125.)

ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.

To Ploy the Battalion into Column Doubled on the Centre.
(Fig. 69.)

This movement consists in ploying the corresponding companies of the right and left wings into columns at company distance, or closed in mass, in rear of the two centre companies, according to the principles prescribed, Article Third, Part Second, of this School.

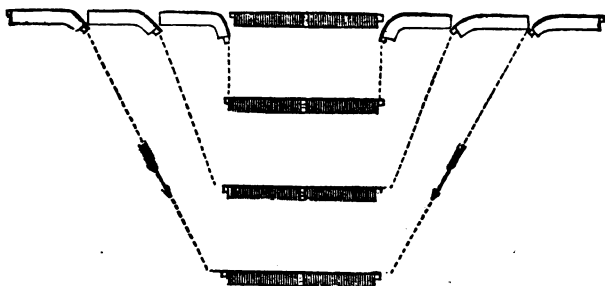


Fig. 70.—Double Column at half Distance.

The colonel, wishing to form the double column at company distance, (the battalion being in line of battle,) will command:

1. *Double column, at half distance.* 2. *Battalion, inwards—*
FACE. 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the captains will place themselves

two paces in front of their respective companies; the captains of the two centre companies will caution them to stand fast, and the other captains will caution their companies to face to the left and right, respectively. The covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

At the second command the fourth and fifth companies will stand fast; the others of the right wing will face to the left, and the others of the left wing will face to the right; each captain whose company has faced, will hasten to break to the rear the two files at the head of his company; the left guide of each right company, and the right guide of each left company, will each place himself at the head of its front rank, and the captain by the side of his guide.

At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies, which are to form the first division, will stand fast; the senior captain of the two will place himself before the centre of the division, and command: *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies, and the left guide of the left company will place himself in the front rank on the left of the division, as soon as he shall be able to pass.

All the other companies, conducted by their captains, will step off with life to arrange themselves in column at company distance, each company behind the preceding one in the column of the same wing, so that, in the right wing, the third may be next behind the fourth, the second next to the third, and so on to the right company; and, in the left wing, the sixth may be next behind the fifth, the seventh next to the sixth, and so on to the left company of the battalion.

The corresponding companies of the two wings will unite into divisions in arranging themselves in column; an instant before the union, at the centre of the column, the left guides of right companies will pass into the line of file-closers, and each captain will command: 1. *Such company*; 2. *Halt*; 3. *FRONT*.

At the second command, which will be given at the instant of union, each company will halt; at the third, it will face to the front. The senior captain in each division will

place himself on its right, and command, *Right*—DRESS, and the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The division being aligned, its chief will command FRONT, and take his position two paces before its centre.

The column being thus formed, the divisions will take the respective denominations of *first, second, third, &c.*, according to position in the column, beginning at the front.

The lieutenant colonel, who, at the second command given by the colonel, will have placed himself at a little more than company distance in rear of the right guide of the first division, will assure the right guides on the direction as they successively arrive, by placing himself in their rear.

The music will pass to the rear of the column.

The battalion being in march, to form the double column at company distance without halting the battalion, the colonel will command.

1. *Double column at half distance.*
2. *Battalion by the right and left flanks.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command, each captain will move briskly in front of the centre of his company; the captains of the fourth and fifth will caution their companies to march straight forward; the other captains will caution their companies to face to the right and left.

At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies will continue to march straight forward; the senior captain will place himself before the centre of his division, and command, *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The left guide of the fifth company will place himself on the left of the front rank of the division. The men will take the touch of the elbows to the right. The color and general guides will ~~retake~~ their places. The three right companies will face to the left, and the three left companies will face to the right. Each captain will break to the rear two files at the head of his company; the left guides of the right com-

panies, and the right guides of the left companies, will each place himself at the head of the front rank of his company, and the captain by the side of his guide.

The third and sixth companies will enter the column and direct themselves parallelly to the first division. Each of the other companies will, in like manner, place itself behind the company of the wing to which it belongs, and will be careful to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

The corresponding companies of each wing will unite into divisions on taking their positions in column, and each captain, the instant the head of his company arrives at the centre of the column, will command, 1. *Such company by the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH. The senior captain of the two companies will place himself in front of the centre of his division, and command, *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The two companies thus formed into a division will take the touch of elbows to the right, and when each division has gained its proper distance, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

When the battalion presents an odd number of companies, the formation will be made in like manner, and the company on either flank which shall find itself without a corresponding one, will place itself at company distance behind the wing to which it belongs.

The double column, closed in mass, will be formed according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication, *closed in mass*, for that of *at half distance*.

The double column never being formed when two or more battalions are to be in one general column, it will habitually take the guide to the right, sometimes to the left, or in the centre of the column; in the last case the command will be, *Guide centre*. The column will march and change direction according to the principles prescribed for a simple column by division.

To form double columns from simple column by company.

The battalion being in column (Figure 71) by company, either at full distance, or closed in mass, right in front, and at a halt, to form double column, the colonel will command :

1. *Form double column.* 2.

Right wing, right—FACE.

3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command the captains of the companies of the right wing will caution them that they will have to face to the right. The captains of the left wing will caution their companies to stand fast. The left general guide will place himself on the prolongation of the front rank of the last battalion company, and at a distance from its right guide, equal to the front of a company, he will be assured in his position by the senior major.

At the second command, the companies of the right wing will face to the right, and their captains will place themselves respectively by the side of their right guide.

At the command *march*, the companies which have faced, will march straight forward ; the captain of the left company of the right wing will halt in his own person, and let his company file past him, and when the left file is abreast of him, he will command :

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 2. *MARCH.* 3. *Guide right.*

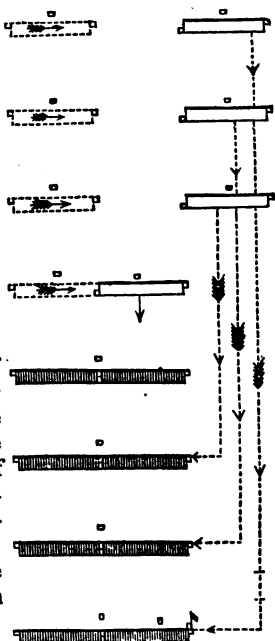


Fig. 71.

At this, the left guide, placing himself on the right of the rear rank, now in front, will so conduct it, that the elbow of the file on his left will graze the covering sergeant on the right of the leading company of the left wing; just before the union of the two companies, the left guide will take his place in the rank of file closers, and when the company has just passed the covering sergeant, the captain will command:

1. *Such company, halt.*
2. *About face.*

The chief of the division will immediately place himself on its right.

The three right companies of the battalion having marched a distance equal to the front of a division, the colonel will command:

1. *Three companies by the right flank.*
2. MARCH.
Guide right.

At the third command, the leading left guide will direct himself on the left general guide. Each captain, as his company arrives on the line with the corresponding division company, will command:

1. *Such company by the right flank.*
2. MARCH.

If the column is in close order, the two right companies will mark time, by command of their captains, until the third has passed, and the right company will in its turn mark time until the second has passed.

When the front rank man of the left file has arrived up with the right guide of the corresponding division company, each captain will command:

1. *Such company, halt.*
2. FRONT.

The lieutenant-colonel will assure the right guides of the

divisions, on the direction, by placing himself in their rear, as they successively arrive.

The column being at *full distance*, to form double column while marching, and to continue the march, the colonel will command :

1. *Form double column.* 2. *Right wing by the right flank.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

This movement will be executed by the command and means as prescribed when at a halt, observing what follows. At the first command, the captains of the left wing will command: *Quick time*, and at the command *march*, will take or continue the quick step. At the same command, the companies of the right wing will move at *double quick*. The captain of the company, next in front of the leading company of the left wing, having prolonged his company a distance equal to its front, will command :

1. *Such company by the left flank, quick time.*
2. MARCH.

And as soon as the company has faced, will add :

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

As soon as the corresponding company of his division has arrived abreast with his company, he will command :

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

And at this, the division will take the guide to the right.

The captains of the other companies of the right wing, on uniting with their respective division companies, will command :

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 2. *Quick time.*
3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right.*

At this, the right guides of division will cover the right guides of the column.

Deployment of the Double Column, Faced to the Front.

The colonel, wishing to deploy the double column, will place a marker respectively before the right and left files of the first division, and a third before the left file of the right company, same division; which being done, he will cause the two general guides to spring out on the alignment of the markers, a little beyond the points at which the respective flanks of the battalion ought to rest; he will then command :

1. *Deploy column.* 2. *Battalion outwards—FACE.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

The column will deploy itself on the two companies at its head, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of columns in mass. The captains of these companies will each, at the command *march*, place himself on the right of his own company, and align it by the right; the captain of the fourth will then place himself in the rear rank, and the covering sergeant in the rank of file-closers, at the moment the captain of the third shall come to its left to align it.

The deployment being ended, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

If it be the wish of the colonel to cause the fire to commence pending the deployment, he will give an order to that effect to the captains of the fourth and fifth companies.

The battalion being in double column and in march, if the colonel shall wish to deploy it without halting the column, he will cause three markers to be posted on the line of battle, and when the head of the column shall arrive near the markers, he will command :

1. *Deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

The column will deploy on the two leading companies, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of a close column. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will halt it, and the captains of the fourth and fifth companies will align their companies by the right.

If the column be in march, and it be the wish of the colonel to deploy the column and to continue to march in the order of battle, he will not cause markers to be established at the head of the column. The movement will be executed by the commands and means indicated for deploying when in march and halting. At the first command, the chief of the first division will command, *Quick time*. At the command *march*, the first division will continue to march in quick time; the colonel will command, *Guide centre*. The captains of the fourth and fifth companies, the color, and the men, will immediately conform to the principles of the march in line of battle. The companies will take the quick step by the command of their captains, as they successively arrive in line. The movement completed, the colonel may cause the battalion to march in double quick time.

To Form the Double Column into Line of Battle, Faced to the Right or Left. (Fig. 72.)

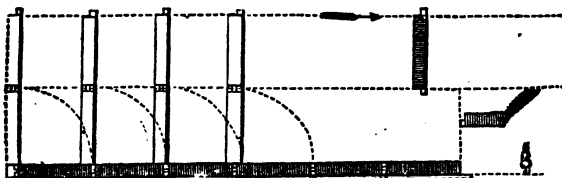


Fig. 72.—Right into Line Wheel, left Companies on the Right into Line.

The double column, being at company distance and at a halt, may be formed into line of battle faced to the right of

left; when the colonel shall wish to form it faced to the right, he will command :

1. *Right into line wheel, left companies on the right into line.*
2. *Battalion, guide right.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company; the right companies will be cautioned that they will have to wheel to the right into line, the left companies that they will have to march straight forward.

At the second command, the left guide of the fourth company will place himself briskly on the direction of the right guides of the column, face to them, and opposite to one of the three last files of his company when in line of battle; the lieutenant colonel will assure him in that position.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated by all the captains, the right companies will form to the right into line of battle, the left companies will put themselves in march in order to form on the right into line of battle; the lieutenant colonel will assure the guides of the left wing on the line of battle as they successively come upon it.

If the column be in march, the colonel will command :

1. *Right into line wheel.* 2. *Left companies, on the right into line.* 3. *Battalion, guide right.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, each captain will place himself promptly before the centre of his company; the right companies will be cautioned that they will have to wheel to the right, and the left companies that they will have to form on the right into line.

At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the right companies will form to the right into line, and left companies on the right into line.

If the colonel should wish to move the battalion forward, at the moment the right companies have completed the wheel, he will command :

5. *Forward.* 6. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the command *forward*, the captains of the right companies will command, *Quick time.* At the command *march*, the right companies will cease to wheel and march straight forward. The colonel will then add :

7. *Guide centre.*

The movement of the left companies will be executed in double quick time, as prescribed above, and as they arrive on the line each captain will cause his company to march in quick time.

The column may be formed faced to the left into line of battle according to the same principles.

Remark on the Deployment of the Double Column.

The depth of the double column, at company distance, being inconsiderable, closing it in mass, if at a halt, in order to deploy it, may be dispensed with; but if it be in march, it will be preferable to cause it so to close, in halting, before deploying.

The double column will be deployed habitually on the centre companies, but the colonel may sometimes deploy it on any interior company, or on the first or eighth company.

ARTICLE FOURTEENTH.

Dispositions Against Cavalry.

A battalion being in column by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to

form it into square, he will first cause divisions to be formed, which being done, he will command :

1. *To form square.* 2. *To half distance, close column.* 3.

MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH). (Fig. 73.)

At the command *march*, the column will close to company distance, the second division taking its distance from the rear rank of the first division.

At the moment of halting the fourth division, the file-closers of each company of which it is composed, passing by the outer flank of their companies, will place themselves two paces before the front rank opposite to their respective places in line of battle, and face towards the head of the column.

At the commencement of the movement, the major will place himself on the right of the column abreast with the first division; the buglers, formed in two ranks, will place themselves at platoon distance, behind the inner platoons of the second division.

These dispositions being made, the colonel may, according to circumstances, put the column in march or cause it to form square; if he wish to do the latter, he will command :

1. *Form square.* 2. *Right and left into line, wheel.*

(Fig. 74.)

At the first command, the lieutenant colonel, facing to the left guides, and the major, facing to those of the right, will align them, from the front, on the respective guides of the fourth division, who will stand fast, holding up their pieces, inverted, perpendicularly; the right guides, in placing themselves on the direction, will take their exact distances.

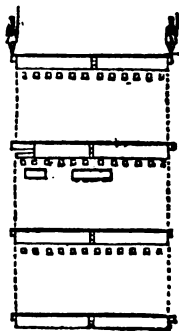


Fig. 73.
To form Square. To
half Distance close
Column.

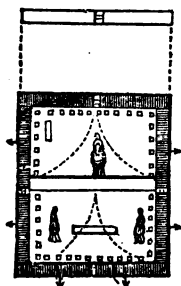


Fig. 74.
Form Square right and
left into Line Wheel.

At the second command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; all the captains of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they will have to wheel, the right companies to the right and the left companies to the left into line of battle.

The color-bearer will step back into the line of file-closers, opposite to his place in line of battle, and will be replaced by the corporal of his file, who is in the rear rank; the corporal of the same file who is in the rank of file-closers will step into the rear rank.

The chief of the fourth division will command: 1. *Fourth division, forward*; 2. *Guide left*, and place himself at the same time two paces outside of its left flank.

These dispositions ended, the colonel will command:

MARCH (or *double quick*—**MARCH**).

At this command, briskly repeated, the first division will stand fast; but its right file will face to the right and its left file to the left.

The companies of the second and third divisions will wheel to the right and left into line, and the buglers will advance a space equal to the front of a company.

The fourth division will close up to form the square, and when it shall have closed its chief will halt it, face it about, and align it upon the rear rank by the guides of the division, who will, for this purpose, remain faced to the front. The junior captain will pass into the rear rank, and the covering sergeant of the left company will place himself behind him in the front rank, become rear. The file-closers will, at the same time, close up a pace on the front rank, and the outer file on each flank of the division will face-outward.

The square being formed, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this command, the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions, as well as the guides, will enter the square.

The captains whose companies have formed to the right into line will remain on the left of their companies; the left guide of each of those companies will, in the rear rank, cover his captain, and the covering sergeant of each will place himself as a file-closer behind the right file of his company.

The field and staff will enter the square, the lieutenant colonel placing himself behind the left and the major behind the right of the first division.

If the battalion present ten, instead of eight companies, the fourth division will make the same movements prescribed above for the second and third divisions, and the fifth the movements prescribed for the fourth division.

A battalion ought never to present, near the enemy's cavalry, an odd company. The odd company, under that circumstance, ought, when the battalion is under arms, to be consolidated, for the time, with the other companies.

The fronts of the square will be designated as follows: the first division will always be the *first front*; the last division the *fourth front*; the right companies of the other divisions will form the *second front*; and the left companies of the same divisions the *third front*.

A battalion being in column by company, at full distance, right in front, and in march, when the colonel shall wish to form square, he will cause this movement to be executed by the commands and means indicated for the formation of square from a halt.

At the command *march*, the column will close to company distance.

When the chief of the fourth division shall command *Quick, march*, the file-closers of this division will place themselves before the front rank.

If the colonel shall wish to form a square, he will command :

1. *Form square.*
2. *Right and left into line, wheel.*
3. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to halt; all the captains of the second and third divisions will rapidly place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they will have to wheel, the right companies to the right and the left companies to the left into line. The chief of the fourth division will caution it to continue its march, and will hasten to its left flank. At the third command, briskly repeated, the chief of the first division will halt his division and align it to the left; the outer files will face to the right and left.

If the battalion, before the square is formed, be in double column, the two leading companies will form the first front, the two rear companies the fourth; the other companies of the right half battalion will form the second, and those of the left half battalion the third front.

The first and fourth fronts will be commanded by the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions; each of the other two by its senior captain.

The commander of each front will place himself four paces behind its present rear rank, and will be replaced momentarily in the command of his company by the next in rank therein.

If the column by division, whether double or simple, be in mass, and the colonel shall wish to form it into square, he will first cause it to take company distance; to this effect he will command:

1. *To form square.*
2. *By the head of column, take half distance.*

The divisions will take half distance, and the several dispositions already indicated will be made; and when these are completed, the colonel may proceed to form square.

If the column be in march, he will also, in the first place,

cause company distance to be taken, and, for this purpose, will command :

1. *To form square.* 2. *By the head of column, take half distance.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

The colonel will proceed to form square the moment the third division shall have its distance. If it be intended merely to *dispose the column for square*, the colonel will not halt the column until the last division has its distance.

In a simple column, left in front, these several movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means; but the fronts of the square will have the same designations as if the right of the column were in front, that is, the first division will constitute the first front, and thus of the other sub-divisions.

The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a distance less than thirty paces, he will command :

1. *By (such) front, forward.* 2. MARCH.

If it be supposed that the advance be made by the first front, the chief of this front will command :

1. *First division, forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

The chief of the second front will face his front to the left. The captains of the companies composing this front will place themselves outside, and on the right of their left guides, who will replace them in the front rank; the chief of the third front will face his front to the right, and the captains in this front will place themselves on the outside, and on the left of their covering sergeants; the chief of the fourth front will face his front about, and command : 1. *Fourth division, forward*; 2. *Guide centre*. The captain who is in the centre of the first front will be charged with the direction of the march, and will regulate himself by the means indicated in the school of the company.

At the command *march*, the square will put itself in motion; the companies marching by the flank will be careful not to lose their distances. The chief of the fourth division will cause his division to keep constantly closed on the flanks of the second and third fronts.

This movement will only be executed in quick time.

The lieutenant colonel will place himself in the rear of the file of direction in order to regulate his march.

If the colonel should wish to halt the square, he will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *HALT.*

At the second command the square will halt; the fourth front will face about immediately, and without further command; the second and third fronts will face outwards; the captains of companies will resume their places as in square.

In moving the square forward by the second, third or fourth fronts, the same rules will be observed.

The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a greater distance than thirty paces, he will command:

1. *Form column.*

The chief of the first front will command:

1. *First division forward.* 2. *Guide left.*

The commander of the fourth front will caution it to stand fast; the commander of the second front will cause it to face to the left, and then command, *By company, by file left.* The commander of the third front will cause it to face to the right, and then command, *By company, by file right.* At the moment the second and third fronts face to the left and right, each captain will cause to break to the rear the two leading files of his company.

These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At this command the first front will march forward; its

chief will halt it when it shall have advanced a space equal to half its front, and align it by the left.

The corresponding companies of the second and third fronts will wheel by file to the left and right, and march to meet each other behind the centre of the first division, and the moment they unite, the captain of each company will halt his company and face it to the front. The division being reformed, its chief will align it by the left.

The commander of the fourth front will cause it to face about; its file-closers will remain before the front rank.

The column being thus reformed, the colonel may put it in march; the right guides will preserve company distance exactly as the directing guides.

When the colonel shall wish to reform square, he will give the commands prescribed above.

To cause the square to march in retreat a greater distance than thirty paces, the colonel will first cause the column to be formed, and will cause it to face by the rear rank; to this end he will command:

1. *To march in retreat.* 2. *Face by the rear rank.* 3. *Battalion about—FACE.* (Fig. 75.)

At the second command, the file-closers of the interior divisions will place themselves, passing by the outer flanks of their respective companies, behind the front rank opposite to their places in line of battle; the file-closers of the other divisions will stand fast.

At the third command the battalion will face about; each chief of division will place himself before its rear rank, become front, passing through the interval between its two companies; the guides will step into the rear rank, now front.

The column being thus disposed, the colonel may put it in march, or cause

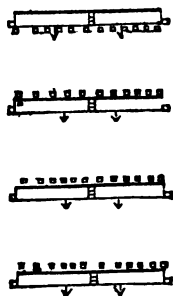


Fig. 75.
Column faced by the
Rear Rank to March
in Retreat.

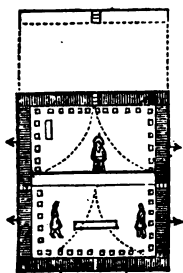


Fig. 76.
To Form Square Marching in Retreat.

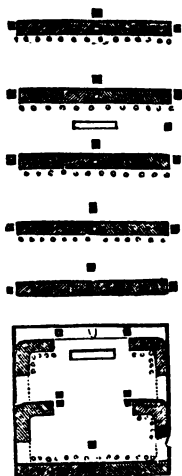


Fig. 77.
To Reduce Square.

it to form square as if it were faced by the front rank. The square being formed, its fronts will preserve the same designations they had when faced by the front rank. (Fig. 76.)

If the square is to be marched to the front a distance greater than thirty paces, the colonel will face the column by the front rank; to this end he will command:

1. *To march in advance.* 2. *Face by the front rank.* 3. *Battalion about—FACE.*

If the column be marching in advance, and the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *To march in retreat.* 2. *Battalion right about.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, the file-closers of the second and third divisions will place themselves rapidly before the front rank of their respective divisions. At the command *march*, the column will face about and move off to the rear.

If the column be marching in retreat, and the colonel shall wish to march it in advance, he will command:

1. *To march in advance.* 2. *Battalion right about.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, the file-closers of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the rear rank of their respective divisions; at the third the column will face by the front rank.

To Reduce the Square. (Fig. 77.)

The colonel, wishing to break the square, will command

1. *Reduce square.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

This movement will be executed in the manner prescribed for forming column, but the file-closers of the fourth front will place themselves behind the rear rank the moment it faces about; the field and staff, the color-bearer and buglers will, at the same time, return to their places in column.

-To Form Square From Line of Battle.

A battalion deployed may be formed into square in a direction either parallel or perpendicular to the line of battle.

In the first case, the colonel will cause the battalion to break by division to the rear, by the right or left, and then close the column to half distance.

In the second case, he will play the battalion into simple column by division at half distance in rear of the right or left division, or into column doubled on the centre.

To play the battalion into column upon one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command :

1. *To form square.* 2. *Column at half distance by division.*
3. *On the first (or fourth) division.* 4. *Battalion right (or left)*—FACE. 5. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

If the battalion be marching in line of battle, and the colonel shall wish to form square in a direction perpendicular to the line of battle, he will command :

1. *To form square.* 2. *On the first (or fourth) division, form column.* 3. *Battalion by the right (or left) flank.*
- MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed for playing a column by division at half

distance. The chief of the first division will halt his division at the command *march*.

To ploy the battalion into double column, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *Double column at half distance.* 3. *Battalion inwards—FACE.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

This movement will be executed as prescribed.

The battalion being in march, to ploy it into double column to form square, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *Form double column.* 3. *Battalion by the right and left flanks.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

This movement will be executed as prescribed. The chief of the leading division will halt his division at the command *march*.

Squares in Four Ranks.

If the square formed in two ranks, according to the preceding rules, should not be deemed sufficiently strong, the colonel may cause the square to be formed in four ranks.

The battalion being in column by company at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form square in four ranks, he will first cause the divisions to be formed, which being executed, he will command:

1. *Form square in four ranks.* 2. *To half distance close column.* 3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution the right company to face to the left and the left company to face to the right. The chiefs of the other divisions will caution their divisions to move forward.

At the command *march*, the right company of the first division will form into four ranks on its left file, and the left company into four ranks on its right file. The formation ended, the chief of this division will align it by the left.

The other divisions will move forward and double their files marching; the right company of each division will double on its left file, and the left company on its right file.

The formation completed, each chief of division will command, *Guide left*. Each chief will halt his division when it shall have the distance of a company front in four ranks from the preceding one, counting from its rear rank, and will align his division by the left. At the instant the fourth division is halted, the file-closers will move rapidly before its front rank.

The colonel will form square, reform column, and reduce square in four ranks, by the same commands and means as prescribed for a battalion in two ranks.

If the square formed in four ranks be reduced and at a halt, and the colonel shall wish to form the battalion into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks undouble files.*
2. *Battalion outwards—*
FACE.
3. MARCH.

At the first command, the captains will step before the centres of their respective companies, and those on the right will caution them to face to the right, and those on the left to face to the left.

At the second command the battalion will face to the right and left.

At the command *march*, each company will undouble its files and reform into two ranks, as indicated in the school of the company. Each captain will halt his company and face it to the front. The formation completed, each chief of division will align his division by the left.

If the column be in march, with divisions formed in four ranks, and the colonel shall wish to reform them into two ranks, he will command:

1. *Guide centre.* 2. *In two ranks, undouble files.* 3. MARCH.

The captain, placed in the centre of each division, will continue to march straight to the front, as will also the left file of the right company, and the right file of the left company. Each company will then be reformed into two ranks, as prescribed in the school of the company.

The battalion being formed into two ranks, the colonel will command, *Guide left* (or *right*).

To form square in four ranks on one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command :

1. *To form square, in four ranks.* 2. *Column at half distance, by division.* 3. *On the first (or fourth) division.* 4. *Battalion, right (or left)—FACE.* 5. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the second command, each chief of division will place himself before the centre of his division, and caution it to face to the right.

At the fourth command, the right guide of the first division will remain faced to the front; the battalion will face to the right.

At the command *march*, the first file of four men of the first division will face to the front, remaining doubled. All the other files of four men will step off together, and each in succession will close up to its proper distance on the file preceding it, and face to the front, remaining doubled. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, *Left—DRESS.*

The other divisions will ploy into column in the same manner as with a battalion of two ranks, observing what follows: the chiefs of division, instead of allowing their divisions to file past them on entering the column, will continue to lead them, and as each division shall arrive on a line with the right guide of the first division, its chief will halt the right guide, who will immediately face to the front; the first file of four men will also halt at the same time and face to the front, remaining doubled. The second file will close on

the first, and when closed, halt, and face to the front, remaining doubled. All the other files will execute successfully what has just been prescribed for the second. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, *Left—DRESS.*

If the battalion be in march, the colonel will command :

1. *To form square, in four ranks.*
2. *On the first division, form column.*
3. *Battalion, by the right flank.*
4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, each chief of division will step in front of the centre of his division and caution it to face by the right flank. The chief of the first division will caution his covering sergeant to halt, and remain faced to the front.

At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right; the covering sergeant of the first division will halt and remain faced to the front; the first division will then form into four ranks, as heretofore prescribed. The other divisions will ploy into column in the same manner as if the movement had taken place from a halt.

If the colonel should wish to form a perpendicular square in four ranks, by double column, he will command :

1. *To form square, in four ranks.*
2. *Double column, at half distance.*
3. *Battalion inwards—FACE.*
4. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the second command, the captains of companies will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution those on the right to face to the left, and those on the left to face to the right. The captain of the fifth company will caution his covering sergeant to stand fast.

At the third command, the battalion will face to the left and right; at the command *march*, the left file of the fourth, and the right file of the fifth company, will face to the front,

remaining doubled. The fourth company will close successively by file of fours on the left file, and the fifth company, in like manner, on the right file; the files will face to the front, remaining doubled. The formation completed, the chief of division will command, *Right dress*. The junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies.

The other companies will close as prescribed for the double column in two ranks, observing what follows: each captain will halt the leading guide of his company the moment the head of his company arrives on a line with the centre of his column. In the right companies, the left guides will step into the line of file-closers, and the left file of four men will face immediately to the front, remaining doubled, and by the side of the right guide of the left company. The companies will each form into four ranks, as prescribed, the right companies on the left file, and the left companies on the right file. The formation completed, the junior captain will place himself between the two companies, and the senior will command, *Right dress*.

If the battalion be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square, in four ranks.* 2. *Form double column.*
3. *Battalion by the right and left flanks.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the second command, the captains will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and those on the right will caution them to face by the left flank, and those on the left to face by the right flank; the captain of the fifth company will caution his covering sergeant to halt, and remain faced to the front.

At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies will halt. The battalion will face to the left and right; the covering sergeant of the fifth company will halt and remain faced to the front; the movement will then be executed as if the battalion was at a halt.

Oblique Squares. (Fig. 78.)

The battalion being in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to form the oblique square, he will command :

1. *To form oblique square.* 2. *On the first division form column.*

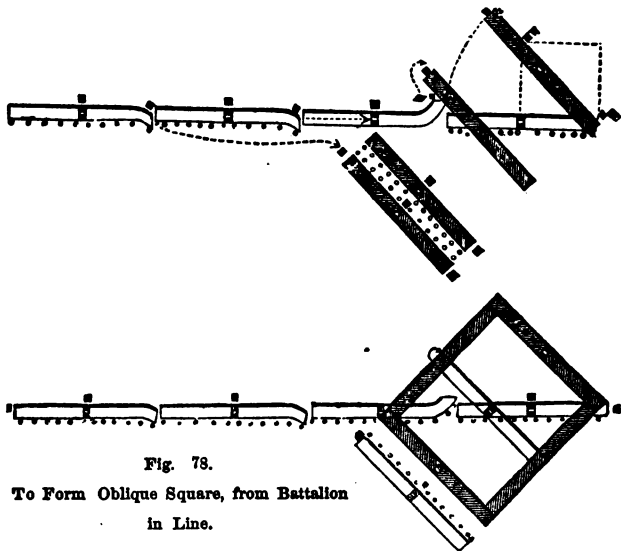


Fig. 78.

To Form Oblique Square, from Battalion
in Line.

At the second command, the lieutenant colonel will trace the alignment of the first division in the following manner : he will place himself before and near the right file of this division, face to the left, march twelve paces along the front rank, halt, face to the right, march twelve paces perpendicularly to the front, halt again, face to the right, and immediately place a marker on this point. The covering sergeant of the right company will step, at the same time, before it

right file, face to the left, and conform the line of his shoulders to that of the shoulders of the marker established by the lieutenant colonel. These two markers being established, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker on the same alignment, at the point where the left of the division will halt.

The chiefs of division will place themselves in front of the centres of their divisions; the chief of the first division will immediately establish it by a wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, against the markers, and align it by the left. The chiefs of the other divisions will caution them to face to the right. The colonel will then command :

3. *Battalion right*—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

The three rear divisions will direct their march so as to place themselves at half distance from each other, and in the rear of the first division, as previously indicated, observing what follows :

The chief of the second division, instead of breaking the headmost files to the rear, will break them to the front, and at the command *march*, will conduct his division towards the point of entrance into the column. Arrived at this point, he will halt in his own person, cause his division to wheel by file to the right, instructing the right guide to direct himself parallelly to the first division; and as soon as the left file has passed, its chief will halt the division, and align it by the left. The other divisions will break to the rear, but slightly; each will enter the column as prescribed for the second, and the moment the battalion is ployed into column, the colonel will cause it to form square.

The formation of battalion into oblique square on the left division, will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Should the battalion be in march, the colonel will first cause it to halt.

In the preceding example, the battalion was supposed to be deployed; but if it be already formed in column, the de-

sired obliquity will be established by causing it to change direction by flank; to this end, the colonel will command :

1. *To form oblique square.* 2. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.* (Fig. 79.)

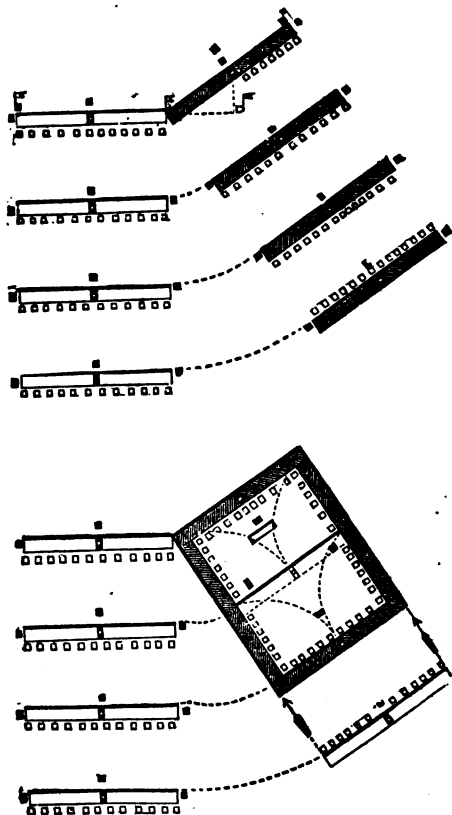


Fig. 79.—To Form Oblique Square from Column.

At the second command, the lieutenant colonel will trace the new direction in the following manner: he will place before the right and left files of the headmost division two markers, and a third on the prolongation of the first two, on the side of the change of direction, and at twelve paces from the flank of the column. He will then place himself before the third marker, march twelve paces perpendicularly to the front, halt, and finish tracing the new direction in the manner indicated in the preceding movement.

The colonel will then command:

3. *Battalion right* (or *left*)—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

The change of direction having been executed, the colonel will cause the square to be formed.

Should the column be in march, the colonel will first cause it to halt.

Oblique squares, in four ranks, will be executed by the same means, and according to the principles prescribed for the formation of squares in four ranks.

If it be the wish of the colonel merely to prepare for square, he will in all formations with that view substitute the command *prepare for square* in place of *to form square*; and in that case the last division will enter the column at company distance.

Column Against Cavalry. (Fig. 80.)

When a column closed in mass has to form square, it will begin by taking company distance; but if so suddenly threatened by cavalry as not to allow time for this disposition, it will be formed in the following manner:

The colonel will command:

1. *Column against cavalry.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the leading division will caution it to stand fast and pass behind the rear rank;

in the interior divisions each captain will promptly designate the number of files necessary to close the interval between his company and the one in front of it. The captains of the divisions next to the one in the rear, in addition to closing the interval in front, will also close up the interval which separates this division from the last; the chief of the fourth division will caution it to face about, and its file-closers will pass briskly before the front rank.

At the command *march*, the guides of each division will place themselves rapidly in the line of file-closers. The first division will stand fast, and the fourth will face about, the outer file of each of these divisions will then face outwards; in the other divisions the files designated for closing the intervals will form to the right and left into line, but in the division next to the rearmost one, the first files that come into line will close to the right or left until they join the rear division. The files of each company which remain in column will close on their outer files, formed into line, in order to create a vacant space in the middle of the column.

If the column be in march, the *column against cavalry* will be formed by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the first and fourth divisions will halt, and the latter division will face about; the interior divisions will conform to what has been prescribed above.

The battalion being no longer threatened by cavalry, the colonel will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

At the command *march*, the files in column will close to the left and right, and each company by the command of

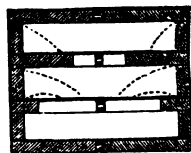
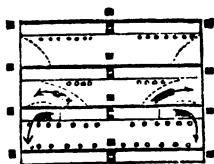


Fig. 80.
Column against Cavalry

its captain will be aligned on the color company, according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

To form square forward on the centre companies.
(Figure 81.)

To form square forward on the centre companies, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward on the centre, form square.*
2. *Battalion, inward face.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command the lieutenant-colonel will hasten to the front, and place three markers, at division or company distance from the line, according as the battalion companies are in number, eight or six ; the first marker opposite the right file of the right centre company, the second opposite one of the three left files of the left centre company, the third, opposite one of the three left files of the right centre company. Each captain will place himself two paces in front of the centre of his company, the captains of the two centre companies will caution them

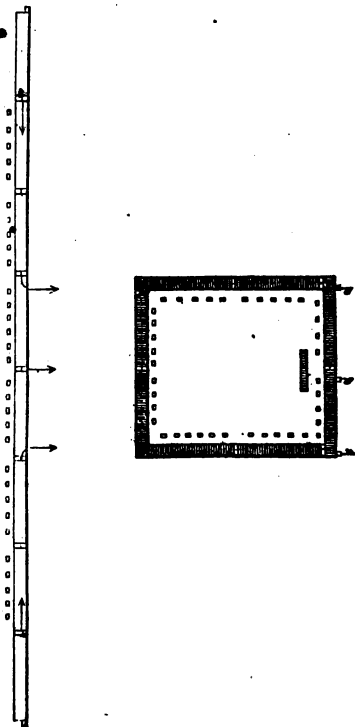


Fig. 81.

to remain faced to the front, the others of the right wing will caution their companies to face to the left, and the others of the left wing, to the right.

The music, in two ranks, will place itself at platoon distance behind the inner platoons of the two centre companies, the color bearer will step back into the line of file closers, opposite his place in line of battle. The covering sergeant will step into the front rank.

At the second command, the two centre companies will remain faced to the front; the others of the right wing will face to the left, and the others of the left wing will face to the right. Those captains whose companies have faced will hasten to the left and right of their companies respectively. The captains of the companies next to the right and left centre companies will caution them that they will wheel by file to the right and left respectively; each of the other captains whose company has faced, with the exception of those on the right and left flanks, will caution his company to follow in the trace of its leading file.

The captains of the right and left companies will caution them to move straight forward; their file closers will move around their right and left flanks, respectively, and place themselves in front of the front rank, opposite their places in line of battle. The senior captain of the two centre companies will place himself before the centre of his division, and caution it that it will have to move to the front.

At the command *march*, rapidly repeated by all the captains, the chief of the first division will command: *Guide right*. and the right guide will so direct his march, that the breast of the front rank man of the right file will come in contact with the elbow of the right marker. The left guide, of the left centre company will place himself on the left of his company, and the left guide of the company on the right of the right centre company, will place himself in the front rank, on the left flank of his company, as soon as able to pass.

The lieutenant-colonel will place himself in a position to face the left guide of the division, when he arrives in the

line, and the senior major will in like manner face the right guide. The captain of the company next to the right of the centre division will so conduct it, that his left guide will follow in the trace of the right file of the division, and the right guide of the company next to the left of the centre division will in like manner follow in the trace of the left file of the division. The captains of the first and last companies will conduct their companies straight forward.

When the centre division has arrived near the markers in front, the colonel will command :

1. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 2. **HALT.**

At the second command, the first division will halt, and be dressed to the right by its chief ; its right file will face to the right, and its left file to the left ; the file closers will close one pace on the rear rank. The companies which have wheeled by file to the right will face by the right flank, their right guides, at the same time, stepping out before the right files of their respective companies, facing to the left, and covering the right guide of the first division. They will be assured in this position by the senior major. The companies which have wheeled by file to the left will face by the left flank, their left guides stepping out at the same time before the left files of their respective companies, facing to the right, and covering the left guide of the first division. They will be assured in this position by the lieutenant-colonel. The file closers of the second and third fronts will close up one pace on the rear rank.

The captains of the first and last companies, at the first command, will caution them to continue their march. At the command *halt*, the captains will halt in their own persons and see their companies file past, and when nearly united, the captain of the first company will command :

1. *First company by the left flank.* 2. **HALT.**

The left guide passing into the rank of file closers just

before the union, the captain of the last company will command :

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 2. HALT.

The fourth division will be aligned by the rear rank. The file closers will at the same time close up one pace on the rear rank, and the outer files on each flank of the division will face outward.

The square being formed, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

The battalion marching in line, and the colonel wishing to form square on the centre, will command :

1. *Forward on the centre, form square.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

This movement will be executed by the commands and means prescribed for forming square from a halt, observing what follows. At the first command the captains of the two centre companies will caution their companies to continue the march to the front. The color rank and general guides will take their places in the ranks.

The battalion being deployed, to form square in four ranks, forward on the centre, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward on the centre, in four ranks, form square.* 2. *Battalion, inward face.* 3. MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).

This movement will be executed by the commands and means prescribed for the two-rank formation, observing what follows. At the command *march*, the centre division will form in four ranks. The companies of the right and left wings, which wheel by file to the left and right, to

form the second and third fronts of the square, will respectively, before wheeling, march straight forward a distance equal to the front of a platoon.

The battalion marching in line, to form square, forward on the centre, in four ranks, the colonel will command :

1. *Forward on the centre, in four ranks, form square.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

This movement will be executed by the commands and means prescribed for the formation from a halt, observing what follows. At the first command, the captains of the two centre companies will caution their companies to continue the march to the front, and at the command *march*, they will form in four ranks.

ARTICLE FIFTEENTH.

Division Columns.

†

To deploy the battalion into division columns.

This movement consists in deploying the odd companies of the right, and the even companies of the left wing, in rear of the companies on their left and right respectively.

The colonel wishing to form the division columns at company distance, the battalion being in line, and at a halt, will command :

1. *Division columns at company distance.* 2. *Battalion, inward face.* 3. **MARCH** (or *double quick—MARCH*).

At the first command, the captains will place them-

selves two paces in front of their respective companies; the captains of the even companies of the right and the odd companies of the left wing will caution their companies to stand fast, and the other captains, of the odd companies of the right, and of the even companies of the left wing, will caution their companies to face to the left and right respectively. The covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

• At the second command, the even companies of the right and the odd companies of the left wing will stand fast; the others of the right wing will face to the left, and the others of the left wing will face to the right; each captain whose company has faced will hasten to the right, and break off files to the rear, and will then place himself, as will also the guides, so as to lead the company.

At the command *march*, the even companies of the right and the odd companies of the left wing will stand fast. The captain of the right centre company will place himself on the right, and the captain of the left centre company on the left of the front rank of their respective companies: they will be covered in the rear rank by the guides. The captain of the second company will take his place in the front rank on the left of his company, and the captain of the seventh in the front rank on the right of his company; they will be covered in the rear rank by the guides.

All the other companies, conducted by their chiefs, will step off with life, to arrange themselves at company distance, each odd company of the right wing in rear of the even company on its left, and each even company of the left wing in rear of the odd company on its right, so that in the right wing, the first and third shall be behind the second and fourth companies, and in the left wing, the sixth and eighth shall be behind the fifth and seventh companies. The third and sixth companies will be halted, faced to the front, and dressed to the right by the senior captain, after which the captains will take their places, two paces in front of the centre of their respective companies. The captain of the first company will conduct it, until the left guide is abreast with the left guide of the company imme-

diately in front, when he will halt, front, and dress his company to the left. The captain of the last company will conduct it until the right guide is abreast with the right guide of the company immediately in front, when it will be halted, faced to the front, and dressed to the right, when the chief will place himself as above indicated.

Division columns being thus formed will take the respective denominations of *first, second, third, fourth*, according to their position in the line, beginning at the right. If there are but seven battalion companies present, the seventh will be considered as a division column. With a less number of companies the movement will not be performed.

The position of the colonel will be the same as prescribed for battalion in line, the distance being estimated from the file closers, in rear of the rear companies of the division columns. The lieutenant-colonel will take post in rear of the centre of the first division column, and the major in rear of the centre of the last division column, each twelve paces from the file closers of the rear companies. The adjutant and sergeant-major will take post as prescribed for battalion in line. The music will take post in the rear of the third division column, and in the manner indicated for battalion in line.

The battalion being in march, to form division columns without halting the battalion, the colonel will command :

1. *Division columns at company distance.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 3. **MARCH** (or *double quick* — **MARCH**).

At the first command, each captain will move as before prescribed ; the captains of the even companies of the right and the odd companies of the left wing will caution their companies to march straight forward, and will command *quick time* ; the other captains will caution their companies to face to the left and right respectively.

At the command *march*, the even companies of the right and the odd companies of the left wing will con-

tinue to march straight forward. The odd companies of the right wing will face to the left, and the even companies of the left wing will face to the right; each captain, whose company has faced, will break to the rear the head of his company, and will place himself, as will also the guides, so as to lead off.

The companies that have faced will each, conducted by its captain, take its place in its division column. Each captain of the right wing, the instant he arrives abreast with the left guide of the leading company of his division column, and each captain of the left wing, the instant he arrives abreast with the right guide of his division column, will command:

1. *Such company by the right (or left) flank.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left (or right).*

The companies will take the quick step as soon as they have attained their distances, and each captain will take his post.

Division columns, closed in mass, will be formed according to the same principles, and by the same command, substituting the indication *closed in mass*, for that of *at company distance*.

A line of division columns at company distance will be closed in mass, and if closed in mass, will take company distance, by the commands and means prescribed for a simple column. The column will always be closed, and distances taken, on the leading companies.

To advance a line of division columns.

A line of division columns will advance, or retire, oblique, and change direction to the right or left, by the commands and means prescribed for advancing in line of battle, observing what follows. In advancing, the captain on the left flank of the leading company of the first, and the captain on the right flank of the leading

company of the fourth division column, will be respectively responsible for the preservation of the distances between those columns and the adjacent ones. When the battalion faces about for the purpose of retiring in line, the captains of the two centre companies, now leading, will place themselves in the rear rank, now in front, and on the outer ranks of their respective companies. The captains of the leading companies of the first and last division columns will place themselves respectively on the flanks of their companies, nearest the centre of the line, and in the rear rank, now leading; they will be responsible for the distances as above indicated. The captains of the rear companies of the division columns will place themselves two paces in front of the centre of their respective companies.

At the command *forward*, by the colonel, the color bearer, with the three corporals of his guard in the rank of file closers, will place themselves in front of the leading centre companies, and opposite their places in line. The color bearer, with his two outer corporals, six paces in front of the file closers, the centre corporal, with the two nearest file closers, will cover them in that rank.

Passage of obstacles, advancing and retiring in line.

A battalion, advancing or retiring in line, encountering an obstacle supposed to cover one or more division columns, they will be broken to the rear according to the principles prescribed for breaking off companies in a deployed line, observing what follows. The first command by the colonel will be, *such a division column, or columns, obstacle*. The necessary commands for breaking off will be given by the senior captain of the column, and the leading company of the column will be closed in mass on the last company of the column behind which it marches.

In coming again into line, each company will be conducted by its chief diagonally to the front, and when its right file shall have arrived at the proper distance from the

division column on the line, it will be filed to the right, and having prolonged itself parallel to the line, will be faced by a flank, by command of its chief, and take the step of the line.

When the battalion, advancing in line, is brought to the right about, and one or more division columns have previously been broken off to the rear, the colonel, should he desire to bring them back into line, will first cause them to take full distance.

To form double column from a line of division columns.

A line of division columns being at a halt, either at half distance or closed in mass, it will form double column by the commands and means prescribed for forming double column from line of battle, observing what follows. At the first command by the colonel, the captains of the companies of the second and third division columns will caution them to stand fast. At the second command, and at the command *march*, the second and third division columns will stand fast.

A line of division columns on a march, either at half distance, or closed in mass, will form double column by the commands and means prescribed for executing the movement from line of battle, observing what follows. At the first command by the colonel, the captains of the companies of the second and third division columns will caution them to march straight forward, and will command: *Quick time*. At the command *march*, the second and third division columns will continue to march straight forward.

To form line of division columns from double columns.

The double column, either at half distance or closed in mass, being at a halt, to form line of division columns, the colonel will command:

1. *Form line division columns.* 2. *Battalion, outward face.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

At the first command, the right and left guides of the first division will place themselves before the right and left files respectively, both faced to the right; the captains will place themselves two paces in front of the centre of their respective companies; the captains of the companies constituting the first and second divisions of the double column will caution their companies to stand fast; the other captains of the right wing will caution their companies to face to the right, and the others of the left wing will caution their companies to face to the left. The lieutenant-colonel will place one marker at company distance from the right of the first division, and on a line with its guides, and a second marker a little less than company distance from the first; they will face toward the division guides, and be assured in their positions by the lieutenant-colonel. The senior major will make a like disposition with markers on the left of the column.

At the second command, the first and second divisions will stand fast, and the captains and guides will place themselves as prescribed; the others of the right wing will face to the right, and the others of the left wing will face to the left. Each captain whose company has faced to the right will place himself by the side of his right guide; and each captain whose company has faced to left will place himself by the side of his left guide.

At the command *march*, the companies which form the second and third division columns will stand fast; those which form the first and fourth division columns, conducted by their respective captains, will move diagonally to the front.

The captain of the leading company of the first division column will conduct his company on the marker on the right of the first division, and the captain of the leading company of the last division column will conduct his company on the marker at the left of the first division; the

other companies will take care to preserve their parallelism with the leading ones, and the guides will maintain themselves on a perpendicular with the guides of the leading companies respectively.

On arriving up with the marker, the captain of each leading company will halt in his own person, and let his company file past him; the leading company, first division column,* will file to the right, and when its last file is abreast of the captain, he will halt the company, face it to the front, and dress it to the left on the markers. The captain of the rear company of this same column will establish his company in the rear of the first by the means just prescribed; the companies constituting the last division column will be established on the markers to the left of the first division, in a similar manner, but by inverse means.

The line being formed, the colonel will command :

Guides—Posts.

At this, the captains and guides will take posts as prescribed.

The double column, either at half distance or closed in mass, being in march, to form line of division columns, no markers will be posted, the colonel will command :

1. *Form line division columns.*
2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick—MARCH).*

At the first command, the captains will place themselves quickly in front of their respective companies; the captains of the first and second divisions will caution their companies march straight to the front, and will command : *Quick time* ; the other captains of the right wing will caution their companies to face by the right flank, and the other captains of the left will caution their companies to face by the left flank.

At the command *march*, the first and second divisions will march in quick time, and their captains will place themselves as prescribed for forming division columns from a halt. The other companies will face by the flanks in marching, and will take their places in line as prescribed for this movement from a halt, observing the following. When the companies have arrived on the line, each chief of the companies of the right wing will command :

1. *By the left flank, march.*
2. *Guide left.*

And each chief of the companies of the left wing will command :

1. *By the right flank, march.*
2. *Guide right*

The chiefs and guides will take their proper places, and the columns will march aligned with, and take the step of, the centre division columns.

To deploy a line of division columns.

A line of division columns will be deployed either at the halt or on a march, by the commands and means prescribed for deploying a double column. If the deployment is made from a halt, the guides of the leading companies of the first and fourth division columns will, at the first command of the colonel, place themselves in front of the right and left files of their companies respectively, faced toward, and on a line with, the markers in front of the centre division. Those of the right wing will be assured in this position by the lieutenant-colonel, and those of the left wing by the major.

Remark on the line of division columns.

In case a battalion, in line of division column, attacks

or repels an attack from the enemy, the colonel may detach the first and fourth division column, each commanded by a field officer, to attack the flanks of the enemy, while the second and third division columns deploy.

ARTICLE SIXTEENTH.

The rally.

The battalion being in line of battle, the colonel will sometimes call *the disperse* to be sounded, at which signal the battalion will break and disperse.

When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion, he will cause *the color* to be sounded, and at the same time place two markers and the color bearer in the direction he may wish to give the battalion.

Each captain will rally his company about six paces in rear of the place it is to occupy in line of battle.

The colonel will cause the color company to be promptly established by the markers, and each company, by the command of its captain, will be aligned on the color company, according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion in column, he will cause *the assembly* to be sounded, and place two markers before the position to be occupied by the first company, the captain of this company will rally his company in rear of the two markers, and each of the other captains will rally his company at platoon distance behind the one which should precede it in the order in column.

ARTICLE SEVENTEENTH.

Rules for manœuvring by the rear rank.

It may often be necessary to cause a battalion to manœuvre by the rear rank : when the case presents itself, the following rules will be observed :

The battalion being by the front rank, when the colonel shall wish to manœuvre by the rear rank, he will command :

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About—*
FACE.

If the battalion be deployed, this movement will be executed as has been indicated for the fire by the rear rank.

If the battalion be in column by company, or by platoon, right or left in front, the chiefs of subdivision to take their new places in column will each pass by the left flank of his subdivision, and the file closers by the right flank ; the guides will place themselves in the rear rank.

If the column be formed by division, the chiefs of division will each pass by the interval in the centre of his division, and the file closers by the outer flanks of their respective companies ; the junior captain in each division will step into the rear rank, and be covered in the front rank by the covering sergeant of the left company.

The lieutenant-colonel will place himself abreast with the leading subdivision, and the senior major abreast with the rearmost one.

The battalion being faced by the rear rank, companies, divisions, and wings, will preserve their prior denominations respectively.

The manœuvres by the rear rank will be executed by the same commands and on the same principles as if the

battalion faced by the front rank, but in such manner that when the battalion shall be brought to its proper front, all the subdivisions may find themselves in their regular order from right to left.

According to this principle, when a column faced by the rear rank is deployed, the subdivisions which, in line of battle by the front rank, ought to find themselves on the right of the subdivision on which the deployment is made, will face to the left; and those which ought to be placed on its left will face to the right.

When a battalion in line of battle, faced by the rear rank, is to be deployed into column, the colonel will announce, in the commands, *left* or *right in front*, according as it may be intended that the first or last subdivision shall be at the head of the column, because the first subdivision is on the left, and the last on the right of the battalion faced by the rear rank. The column by the rear rank will take the guide to the right, if the first subdivision be in front, and to the left in the reverse case.

A column faced by the rear rank will be brought to its proper front by the means heretofore prescribed. If the column be formed by company, or by platoon, the chiefs of subdivision, in order to take their new places in column, will pass by the ~~left~~ of subdivisions, now right, and the file closers by the right, now left.

END OF SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION

INSTRUCTION IN THE BAYONET EXERCISE.

In order that the soldier may become perfect master of his piece, and thus attain the confidence that such knowledge can alone give him; it is advisable that he be early instructed in the rudimentary principles, and movements of the *Bayonet exercise*.

The following lessons will impart sufficient instruction to the soldier, to enable him to use his piece effectively, in withstanding the attack, of either infantry or cavalry. An acquirement necessary for every soldier, but particularly essential to light infantry, whose detached position in skirmishing, frequently obliges the individual soldier to exert all his energies, for the purpose of self-preservation.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THE BAYONET EXERCISE. !

The Guard.

This is the position most suitable for attack and defence. To be properly on guard, the position of the soldier should be such that he can make any movement of attack or defence, without indicating his intention to his adversary by any preliminary movement.

The means of Locomotion.

In this exercise it is necessary to be able to turn rapidly in every direction, as well as to *advance* and *retreat*.

The *leap to the rear* is intended to remove the soldier, by a rapid movement, from an antagonist who presses too closely.

The *volts* are employed to turn in the direction whence one is threatened, or to facilitate the attack and defence.

It is not only of use in facing a new enemy, but may be resorted to in order to avoid the shock of a horse at full speed.

Use of the arms in attack.

The use of *arms* is independent of the use of *legs*; the first is often sufficient to reach the body of the adversary. There are three methods of using the arms—the *thrust*, the *lunge*, and the *lunge out*.

The thrust :—This is the best, because, since the hands retain their usual position on the piece, the aim is more certain. It should always be used whenever the distance of the antagonist will permit it.

The lunge :—This is a rapid and quite sure blow, far preferable to the lunge out ; it however exposes the soldier, and should be used with care.

The lunge out :—This blow reaches farther than either of the others, but it throws the piece so completely out of control, that it should only be used against an antagonist who is endeavoring to escape ; or against the horse of a cavalry soldier, to keep him at a distance.

The combination of the use of arms and legs.

When the thrust alone will not reach the adversary, it must be accomplished by combining with it the use of the legs ; by the *development* or the *passade*, according to the distance. In the assault, the lunge and lunge out may be accompanied by these movements of the legs ; but the recovery of the guard, is so difficult after these combined movements, that they should only be resorted to against an unskilful or flying antagonist

The Parries.

A *parry* is the action of turning aside the weapon of the antagonist from the direction of the body, when he attacks. There are four parries, namely, *prime*, *seconde*, *tierce*, and *quarte* ; with the variations upon them.

A *simple parry* is one which throws off the opponents point in the same line as that in which it presents itself to

reach the body; and the *parry in opposition* is one which throws off the point into a different line from that in which it presents itself.

In order to accustom the soldier to varying the parries according to the direction of attack, the instructor should use a wooden sabre, and cause the soldier to pay particular attention to protecting his hands.

INSTRUCTION.

In giving instruction in the bayonet exercise, the squad will be composed of four men, placed at intervals of eight feet.

THE GUARD.

The men being at the position of *shoulder arms*, the instructor commands:

GUARD!

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Make a half face to the right, on the left heel, bring the left toes to the front; place at the same time the right foot behind and at right angles with the left, the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and about three inches from the left; turn the piece with the left hand, the lock outwards, and seize the handle at the same time, with the right hand, the piece perpendicular and detached from the shoulder, as in the first motion of *charge bayonet*.

Second motion.—Move the right foot quickly, twice its length to the rear, and about three inches to the right; at the same time bend both knees, so that the weight of the body shall rest equally on both legs; the upper part of the body leaning a little forward, the heels on the same line, the feet at right angles to each other, and the left knee vertically over the ankle; at the same time bring down the piece with the hand into the left, the latter seizing it just below the tail band; the lock plate to the right and half turned up; the right hand on a level with, and four inches from the navel; the point of the bayonet opposite the chin; the arms detached from the body. Figure 82.



Fig. 82.

If the men are armed with rifles, or rifle muskets, the first motion will be executed by raising the piece with the right hand, and seizing it with the left just below the tail band, when half facing to the right, as above described.

This guard is called the *middle guard*, because, in it the musket has the middle position between the different directions it assumes in the movements of attack and defence.

THE ADVANCE, THE RETREAT, THE VOLT. :

The squad at the middle guard, the instructor will command:

ADVANCE!

One time and one motion.

Move the left foot quickly forward its own length, raising it but slightly from the ground, and follow it at once with the right foot, thus resuming the position of *guard*.

RETREAT!

One time and one motion.

Move the right foot quickly at least its length to the rear, following it immediately with the left, resuming the position of *guard*.

RIGHT VOLT!

One time and one motion.

Face square to the right by turning on the toes of the left foot, and describing to the left, a quarter of a circle

with the right foot, during the movement the weight of the body sets on the left leg; the knees remain bent, and the feet at the usual distance apart; this direction applies to all *volts*.

LEFT VOLT.

One time and one motion.

Face square to the left by turning on the left toes, and describing *to the right*, a quarter of a circle with the right foot.

RIGHT REAR VOLT!

One time and one motion.

Face to the rear by turning on the toes of the left foot, and describing by the rear, a half circle with the right foot.

LEFT REAR VOLT!

One time and one motion.

Face to the rear by turning on the toes of the left foot, describing by the front a half circle with the right foot.

Observations.

The instructor will take pains to make the men understand that, in the right rear volt, the right foot is moved by the side of the back; and in the left rear volt, by the side of the breast. With recruits he may indicate with his hand, the direction the foot is to move.

THE DEVELOPMENT.

The instructor will command:

DEVELOP!

One time and one motion.

Straighten strongly the right knee, and advance quickly the left foot close along the ground, twice its length, the left knee vertically over the ankle; the right foot flat to the ground; and the body erect on the haunches.

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Move back the left foot to the position it occupied before the development, bend the right knee, and replace the body in its original position.

THE PASSADE.

PASSADE!

One time and one motion.

Move the right foot twice its length in front of the left, parallel to its first position; at once follow this movement by the development of the left foot, moving it four times its length in front of the right; the right knee is straightened and the position in all respects that of the development.

GUARD!

The same as from the development.

On resuming the guard the soldier is five times the length of his foot in advance of the position he occupied before commencing the passade.

THE LEAP TO THE REAR.

*Leap to the—REAR!**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Lean forward and rest the weight of the body on the left leg.

Second motion.—By a spring from the left leg, leap with both feet as far to the rear as possible; alight in the position of guard, the left foot touching the ground first.

THE THRUST.

Before executing thus and all the subsequent movements, the men will be placed in the position of *middle guard*.

THRUST!

One time and one motion.

Thrust the piece quickly forward to the full length of



Fig. 83.

the *left* arm, and at the same time give it a rotary movement so as to bring the guard underneath towards the ground. The hands maintain their respective positions on the piece; the point of bayonet at the height of the breast. Neither the body nor the legs change position. (Fig. 83)

GUARD!

Bring back the piece to the position of *middle guard*.

THE LUNGE.

LUNGE!

One time and one motion.



Fig. 84.

Thrust the piece quickly forward to the full length of the *right* arm, at the same time slide back the left hand until it covers the guard; straighten the right knee, and throw forward the right shoulder upon the same line with the left. The point of the bayonet the height of the breast. (Fig. 84.)

GUARD!

Resume *middle guard*.

LUNGE-OUT.

LUNGE-OUT!

One time and one motion.

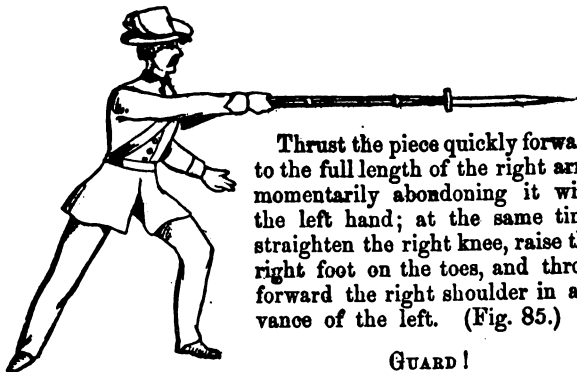


Fig. 85

Thrust the piece quickly forward to the full length of the right arm, momentarily abandoning it with the left hand; at the same time straighten the right knee, raise the right foot on the toes, and throw forward the right shoulder in advance of the left. (Fig. 85.)

GUARD!

Resume *middle guard*.

After suitable proficiency in the previous lessons, the instructor will combine the *thrust* with the *development*, and *passade*, giving the commands:

THRUST!—DEVELOP!—GUARD!

THRUST!—PASSADE!—GUARD!

all of which will be executed as before prescribed.

The soldier should accustom himself to the proper position of *middle GUARD*, to which he returns after each movement; being careful that the arms are detached from the body, in order that the piece may be easily and rapidly moved to defend any point threatened.

THE FOUR DIRECTIONS OF ATTACK.

IN PRIME.

*In prime—THRUST!**One time and two motions.**First motion.*—Drop the point of the bayonet and move it slightly to the right until it is opposite the right loin.*Second motion.*—Thrust as prescribed, the point of the bayonet opposite the right loin.

GUARD!

Resume the *middle guard*.

IN SECONDE.

*In seconde—THRUST!**One time and two motions.**First motion.*—Drop the point of the bayonet and move it slightly to the left until it is opposite the left loin.*Second motion.*—Thrust, the point of the bayonet opposite the left loin.

GUARD!

Resume the *middle guard*.

IN TIERCE.

*In tierce—THRUST!**One time and two motions.**First motion.*—Move the point of the bayonet opposite the left shoulder.*Second motion.*—Thrust, the point of the bayonet opposite the left shoulder.

GUARD!

Resume the *middle guard*.

IN QUARTE.

*In quarte—THRUST!**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Move the point of the bayonet opposite the right shoulder.

Second motion.—Thrust, the point of the bayonet opposite the right shoulder.

GUARD!

Resume *middle guard*.

The *thrust* will be combined with the *development* and *passade*, by the following commands:

*In prime—THRUST!—DEVELOP!—GUARD!**In prime—THRUST!—PASSADE!—GUARD!*

Similar combinations will be made with the directions in *Seconde*, *Tierce*, and *Quarte*.

The lunge and lunge-out will be combined with the four directions of *attack*, thus—

*In prime!—LUNGE!—GUARD!**In prime!—LUNGE-OUT.—GUARD!*

The *development* and *passade* will also be combined with *lunge* and *lunge-out*.

The change of direction, above described, represents a disengagement. The position of the piece in the different directions of attack varies from the middle guard only in the direction of its point.

THE PARRIES.—IN PRIME, IN SECONDE, IN TIERCE,
AND IN QUARTE.

THE PARRY IN PRIME.

*In prime—PARRY!**One time and one motion.*

Carry, rapidly, the point of the bayonet opposite the right knee, describing an arc (the convexity to the left) from



Fig. 86.

above to below, and at the same time give the piece a rotary movement, which turns the rammer square to right. The hammer is opposite the pit of the stomach; the flat of stock under and against the right forearm; the left elbow near the loin and the right elbow as high as the shoulder. (Fig. 86.)

GUARD.

Resume the *middle guard*.

THE PARRY IN SECONDE.

In seconde—PARRY!

One time and one motion.



Fig. 87.

Carry, rapidly, the point of the bayonet about one foot outside of the left knee, describing an arc (the convexity to the right) from above to below, and at the same time give the piece a rotary movement, so as to turn the barrel square to the left. At the same time draw in both arms towards the body, so that the hammer rests on the left breast; the flat of the stock under and against the right forearm; the left elbow at the left side, the right elbow at the height of the shoulder. (Fig. 87)

GUARD!

Resume the *middle guard*.

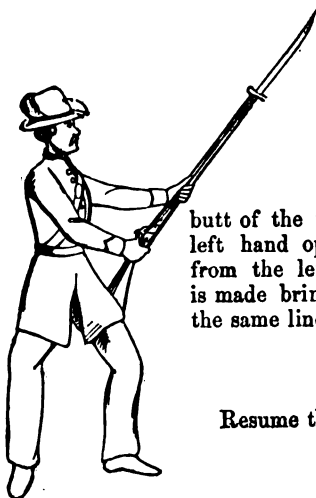


Fig. 88.

THE PARRY IN TIERCE.*In tierce—PARRY!**One time and one motion.*

Move the piece quickly to the left, giving it a rotary movement, which turns the rammer to the left, the butt of the piece near the left loin, the left hand opposite and twenty inches from the left shoulder. As the parry is made bring up the right shoulder on the same line with the left. (Fig. 88)

GUARD!*Resume the middle guard.***THE PARRY IN QUARTE.***In quarte—PARRY!**One time and one motion.*

Move the piece quickly to the right, turning the rammer towards the right and placing the left hand at the height of the breast, and about five inches to the right of its original position. In this parry the right arm does not move, the wrist alone acts. (Fig. 89.)

GUARD!*Resume the middle guard.*

The several parries may be combined with the thrust, thus—



Fig. 89.

In prime—PARRY! THRUST! GUARD!

The direction of the thrust will depend on the position of the point of the bayonet after the parry.

THE PARRIES.—IN HIGH TIERCE AND HIGH QUARTE.

THE PARRY IN HIGH TIERCE.

In high tierce—PARRY!

One time and one motion.

Move the piece quickly to the left, bringing the right hand against the left elbow; at the same time give the piece a rotary movement, which while placing it obliquely in front and to the left of the head, turns the rammer towards the left; the left hand about eight inches from the neck.

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Resume the *middle guard*.

THE PARRY IN HIGH QUARTE.

In high quarte—PARRY!

One time and one motion.

Move the piece rapidly to the right, bringing the left hand to the height of the neck, and the forearm near the breast; at the same time, turn the piece so as to bring the rammer to the right, and the piece obliquely in front and to the right of the head.

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Resume the *middle guard*.

These parries, which are but modifications of the preceding,

are designed for defence against cavalry ; high quarte covering the top and right side of the head, and high tierce, the left, against sabre blows.

COMBINATION OF THE HIGH PARRIES.

1. *In high tierce*—PARRY ! 2. THRUST ! 3. GUARD.

The thrust will be as prescribed (fig. 78.), except that the point of the bayonet is kept at the height of the head.

The same for *high quarte*.

GUARDS AGAINST INFANTRY AND CAVALRY.

Guard against Infantry—GUARD !

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Made a half face to the right, turning on both heels ; at the same time raise the piece with the right hand, and seize it near the lower band.

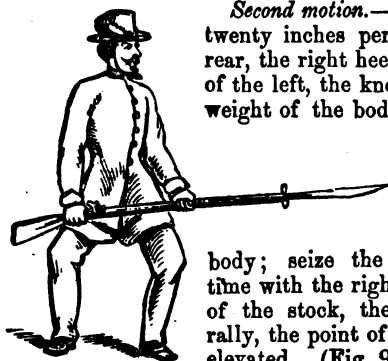


Fig 90.

Second motion.—Carry the right foot twenty inches perpendicularly to the rear, the right heel in the prolongation of the left, the knees slightly bent, the weight of the body resting equally on both legs ; lower the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body ; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the small of the stock, the arms falling naturally, the point of the bayonet slightly elevated. (Fig. 90.)

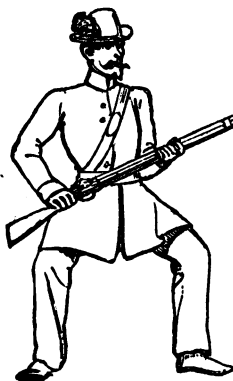
*Guard against Cavalry—GUARD!**One time and two motions.*

Fig 91.

Both motions the same as for *Guard against infantry*, except that the right hand will be supported against the hip, and the point of the bayonet held at the height of the eye. (Fig. 91.)

The above instruction is given on the supposition that the soldier is at the shoulder arms of the rifle musket manual. If he be armed with a musket, the first motion will be the same as the first motion of the *middle guard* for a *private*.

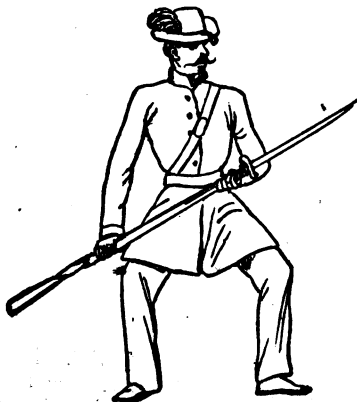


Fig. 92.

THE SHORTENED THRUST.

THE THRUST SHORTENED ON THE RIGHT.

*On the right—SHORTEN!**One time and two motions.*

First motion.—Move the piece quickly to the rear, let go the handle with the right hand, and with it seize the piece just above the left hand.

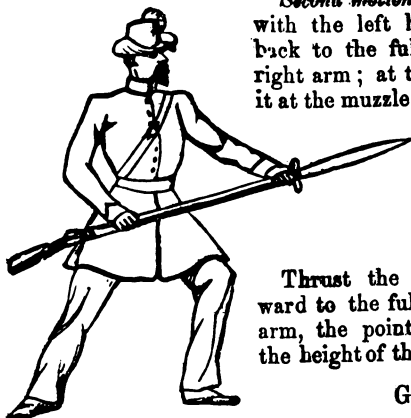


Fig. 98.

Second motion.—Let go the piece with the left hand, and throw it back to the full extension of the right arm; at the same time seize it at the muzzle with the left hand. (Fig. 92.)

THRUST!

One time and one motion.

Thrust the piece quickly forward to the full length of the left arm, the point of the bayonet at the height of the breast. (Fig. 93.)

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Carry back the left hand to the tail-band just below the right hand, which then seizes the handle, and resume the *middle guard*.

THE THRUST SHORTENED ON THE LEFT.

On the left—**SHORTEN!**

One time and two motions.

First motion.—Turn on the toes of the right foot, describing with the heel a quarter of a circle outwards, and move the left foot rapidly twice its length in rear of the right foot, straightening the left knee; at the same time raise the muzzle of the piece until the barrel is nearly vertical, turn the barrel to the front, pass the butt outside of the left thigh, and rest the right hand against the left loin.

Second motion.—Let go the piece with the right hand, which seizes it again at the muzzle, after the left hand has rapidly thrown it back to the full extremity of the left arm.

THRUST!

One time and one motion.

Thrust the piece forward to the full length of the right arm, the point of the bayonet at the height of the breast.

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Carry back the right hand to the handle, advance the piece, and bring it back to the middle guard; at the same time resume the proper position of feet and body by turning on the toes of the right foot a quarter of a circle, and advancing the left.

These two shortened thrusts are only used at very close quarters and are delivered when the adversary, in making his attack, has advanced breast to breast.

BLOWS WITH THE BUTT OF THE PIECE.

THE BLOW TO THE FRONT.**1. Lower the—STOCK!**

One time and one motion.

Lower the right hand to nearly the full length of the arm, at the same time raising the muzzle until the left hand is on the breast; straighten the right knee, and advance the right shoulder to the same line with the left.

2. STRIKE!

One time and one motion.

Throw the butt rapidly forward.

GUARD!

One time and one motion.

Resume middle guard.

This blow is directed against the belly of the antagonist, and should only be used when he presses close up and throws up the barrel of the piece.

The stock will be used in case of a sudden and close attack on the right or in the rear by turning rapidly in those directions, and using the piece as above set forth. The commands will be—

For blow to the rear.

1. *Stock to the*—REAR! 2. STRIKE! 3. GUARD!

For blow to the right.

1. *Stock to the*—RIGHT! 2. STRIKE! 3. GUARD!

The blows with the butt may be followed by the *development*. The command will be—

1. *Stock to the*—RIGHT! 2. STRIKE! 3. DEVELOP!
4. GUARD!

The foregoing movements of attack and defence will be combined with *the advance, the retreat, and the leap to the rear*, thus—

REPETITION AND COMBINATION OF THE MOVEMENTS.

1. ADVANCE!...2. *In prime*—PARRY!...3. THRUST!...4. GUARD!

1. RETREAT!...2. THRUST!.....3. DEVELOP!...4. GUARD!

1. ADVANCE!...2. *In seconde*—PARRY!...3. THRUST!...4. GUARD!

1. RETREAT!...2. THRUST!.....3. PASSADE!...4. GUARD!

1. ADVANCE!...2. *In tierce*—PARRY!...3. THRUST!...4. GUARD!

1. RETREAT!...2. LUNGE!.....3. GUARD!

1. ADVANCE!...2. *In quarte*—PARRY!...3. THRUST!...4. GUARD!

1. RETREAT!...2. LUNGE-OUT!.....3. GUARD!

1. *Leap to the*—REAR!...2. THRUST!...3. DEVELOP!...4. GUARD

1. *Leap to the*—REAR!...2. THRUST!...3. PASSADE!...4. GUARD

THE DIRECTIONS OF ATTACK COMBINED WITH EACH OTHER.

1. QUARTE!..2. TIERCE!..3. THRUST!..4. DEVELOP!..5. GUARD!.
1. QUARTE!..2. PRIME!...3. THRUST!..4. PASSADE!..5. GUARD!.
1. QUARTE!..2. SECONDE! 3. LUNGE!...4. GUARD!...
1. SECONDE! 2. TIERCE!..3. LUNGE-OUT4. GUARD!...
1. SECONDE! 2. QUARTE!..3. THRUST!..4. PASSADE!..5. GUARD!.
1. SECONDE! 2. PRIME!...3. THRUST!..4. DEVELOP!..5. GUARD!.
1. TIERCE!..2. QUARTE!..3. LUNGE!...4. GUARD!...
1. TIERCE!..2. SECONDE! 3. LUNGE-OUT4. GUARD!...
1. TIERCE!..2. PRIME!...3. THRUST!..4. DEVELOP!..5. GUARD!.
1. PRIME!...2. QUARTE!..3. THRUST!..4. PASSADE!..5. GUARD!.
1. PRIME!...2. SECONDE! 3. LUNGE!...4. GUARD!...
1. PRIME!...2. TIERCE!...3. LUNGE-OUT4. GUARD!...

The volts which place the soldier in a new direction, are combined with the movements of attack and defence, as

Right—VOLT—THRUST—DEVELOP—GUARD.

In order that the soldier may be equally prepared for attack and defence, it is important that in executing the volt, he should keep his feet the proper distance apart, and should not disarrange his guard.

END OF THE BAYONET DRILL

INSTRUCTION IN THE SMALL SWORD EXERCISE.

THE sword is held by the first two fingers and thumb of the right hand, the thumb along the handle, not too near the guard, the handle resting in the palm of the hand. At the command :

ON GUARD !

Step out briskly with the right foot, eighteen inches; keep the body well up on the haunches, head erect, chest full, waist in, shoulders square to the left, the weight of the body resting well on the left leg, knees turned out, heels on a line, feet at right angles; bring the point of the sword opposite the hollow of the shoulder, hold it firmly but lightly in the hand, points of the fingers up, wrist flexible; raise the left arm at an easy curve behind the head, the hand open, and the fingers together. (Fig. 94.)

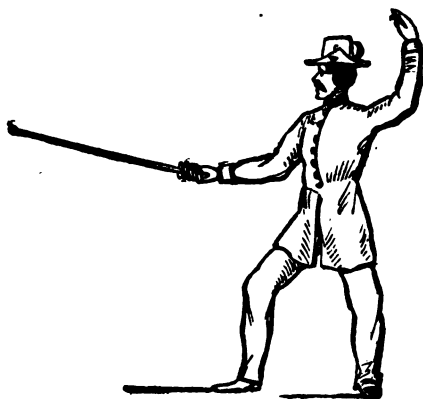


Fig. 94.

MARCH!

Move the right foot six inches forward, and follow with the left foot the same distance; keep the eye over the point and on the eye of your adversary.

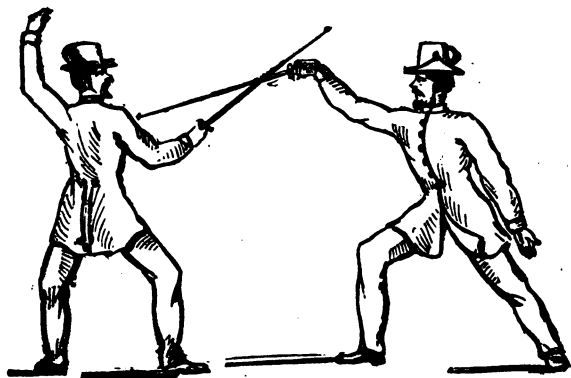
RETIRE!

Carry the left foot six inches to the rear and follow with the right the same distance, maintaining a steady guard.

These motions should be practised until the movements can be made without tottering when coming on guard.

LUNGE—CARTE.

Step out with the right foot thirty-six inches, keeping the knee over the instep, and the left leg well straightened. Bring the left arm down along the left side, but not touching, palm to the front, fingers straight, body well up on the haunches, head erect, right hand higher than the head, the fingers pointing upward, the point of the sword as low as the shoulder. Look at your adversary over and outside of the right arm. (Fig. 95.)

**Fig. 95.**

ON GUARD!

Resume the position of *guard*, coming up without a jerk.

After sufficient practice the movements may be combined—thus:

MARCH—LUNGE—RETIRE—LUNGE—ON GUARD!

Being on guard *in carte*, the instructor commands:

CHANGE—TIERCE!

At this command drop the point of your sword close under the blade of your adversary's sword, and come up on the left side of his blade; turn your wrist, bringing your thumb more to the top, your knuckles to the right and fingers down, holding the sword with a stronger grasp.

LUNGE!

Step out briskly, as described for the lunge *in carte*, keep the head well up, and see your adversary *inside* of your arm. (Fig. 96.)

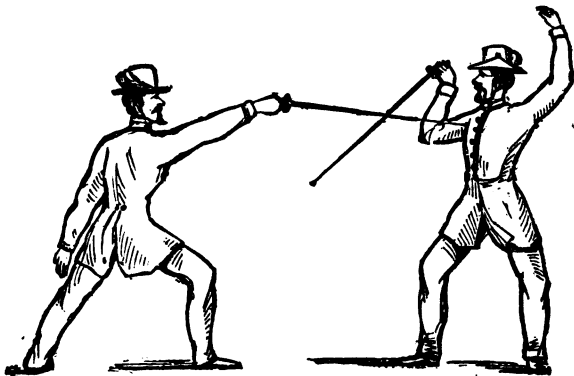


Fig. 96.

ON GUARD!

Resume the position of guard.

To combine the movements, the instructor commands :

MARCH—CHANGE—LUNGE—CARTE—ON GUARD—RETIRE
CHANGE—TIERCE—LUNGE—ON GUARD!

All of which will be executed as prescribed in the description of the separate movements.

REST!

At this command bring back the right foot in front of and perpendicular to the left, heels together. Drop the left arm to the side, and bring the point of the sword to rest upon the right toe; stand erect, eyes to the front.

Being on guard *in carte*, the instructor commands :

CHANGE—DEMI-CIRCLE!

At this command the sword arm will be extended, bringing the hand to the height of the hollow of the shoulder, the point of the sword at the height of the middle of the breast, fingers up, opposition on the right of your adversary's blade.

CHANGE—OCTAVE!

At this command the sword is to be passed *over* but close to your adversary's sword, the hand being still kept *in carte*, but the blade opposed *in tierce*.

LUNGE—OCTAVE!

Lunge out, bringing the hand as high as the chin; hit your adversary in the flank, above the hip.

ON GUARD—CHANGE—DEMI-CIRCLE!

Come steadily on guard, and make the change close to the adversary's blade.

LUNGE—DEMI-CIRCLE—ON GUARD! (Fig. 92.)

Being on guard *in carte*, the instructor commands:

BEAT!

At this command briskly engage your adversary's blade *in feible* with your *forte*, by means of a circular movement of the wrist, pass down with the half circle, bringing the point of your sword toward your adversary's hand, but well up at the same time.

Being on guard *in carte*, the instructor commands:

DISENGAGE—ONE!

At this command drop the point of your sword under your adversary's blade without changing your hand, and bring it up close on his left by relaxing your grasp.

As your adversary will meet your first disengagement by a like movement, the instructor commands:

DISENGAGE—ONE, TWO!

This is a feint of making the first disengagement, and brings you back to *carte*.

DISENGAGE—ONE, TWO, THREE!

Drop your point, make a feint of the first and second disengagements, and return to the first disengagement.

THE PARRIES.

PARRY—CARTE!

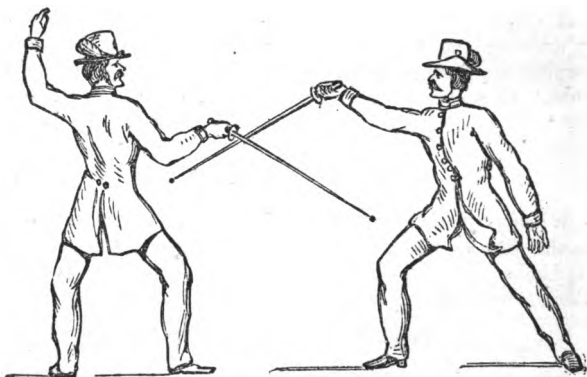
On receiving your adversary's lunge *in carte*, the point of his sword is carried clear of your left ear by moving your hand inside about six inches, being careful not to move the whole blade, as by so doing you will be exposed to a *reprise* or double thrust from your antagonist. (Fig. 90.)

PARRY—TIERCE !

Your point is to be kept well before you, and your adversary's point thrown clear of your right ear, by raising your hand and slightly contracting your arm.

PARRY—DEMI-CIRCLE !

This thrust is parried inside, your point in the centre, but lower than your hand. (Fig. 97.)

**Fig. 97****PARRY—OCTAVE !**

With the wrist bent toward the centre, parry outside, keeping the point low.

RIPOSTE !

This is a lunge made immediately after having parried your adversary's thrust, having made it return quickly to the guard.

LUNGE—SECONDE!

Being on guard in *tierce*, by a semi-circular movement, drop the point of your blade and lunge at the flank.

PARRY—SECONDE!

This is executed by extending the arm so that the hand shall be the height of the shoulder, the point of your sword dropping toward the middle of your adversary's breast, the fingers up.

PARRY—PRIME!

A lunge in *tierce* having been made, this parry is executed by drawing the hand back in *tierce* as high as the brow, keeping the point of the blade low, and obliquely to the left front. (Fig. 91.)

 THE COUNTERS.

When your antagonist disengages, follow over and oppose on the side he left the moment that he drops the point of his blade. This movement should be practised in *Carte*, *Tierce*, *Demi-Circle* and *Octave*.

CUT OVER THE POINT.

This is accomplished by throwing your blade back until it clears the point of your antagonist's sword, and then lunging, when at guard, instead of disengaging *under* the blade.

CUT—ONE, Two!

If opposed at the first cut, you will return back in the same manner and lunge.

CUT—ONE—DISENGAGE!

This is effected by clearing your antagonist's point by throwing back your blade, cutting, and then disengaging *under* in the usual manner.

CUT—ONE, TWO—DISENGAGE!

Disengage *under* after making the feint of the two cuts, and then lunge.

LUNGE—QUINTE!

This is a lunge close under your adversary's hand, when he holds a high guard *in carte*.

MANUAL OF THE SWORD OR SABRE FOR OFFICERS.

POSITION OF THE SWORD OR SABRE, UNDER ARMS.

The carry. The gripe is in the right hand, which will be supported against the right hip, the back of the blade against the shoulder.

SALUTE.

Three Times (or Pauses.)

One. At the distance of six paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sword or sabre perpendicularly, the point up, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard at the height of the shoulder, the elbow supported on the body.

Two. Drop the point of the sword or sabre by extending the arm, so that the right hand may be brought to the side of the right thigh, and remain in that position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall be passed, or shall have passed, six paces.

Three. Raise the sword or sabre smartly, and place the back of the blade against the right shoulder.

END OF THE SMALL SWORD EXERCISE.

Price 75 Cents.

CAVALRY TACTICS,

OR,

REGULATIONS FOR THE INSTRUCTION, FORMATIONS,
AND MOVEMENTS OF THE CAVALRY

OF THE

Army and Volunteers of the United States.

BY PHILIP ST. GEORGE COOKE,

BRIGADIER-GENERAL U. S. ARMY.

308 Pages, 12mo. Forty Illustrations, and

SIXTY ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS,

BY

LIEUT.-COL. GEORGE PATTEN,

LATE OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY.

Copies can be obtained, bound in Cloth, price \$1.

WAR DEPARTMENT, Nov. 1, 1861.

The system of Tactics and Regulations for the Cavalry of the United States, by Colonel PHILIP ST. GEORGE COOKE, 2d Cavalry, having been approved by the President, is now published for the government of said service.

Accordingly, instruction in the same will be given after the method pointed out therein; and all additions to, or departures from, the exercises and manœuvres laid down in the system are positively forbidden.

SIMON CAMERON, *Secretary of War.*

~~~~~

This book is a verbatim copy of the **United States Government Cavalry Tactics**, printed at Washington for the War Department and guidance of the United States Cavalry Forces. The present edition has the advantage of **SIXTY ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS**, thereby rendering it far more useful than any other edition.

---

J. W. FORTUNE, Publisher,

102 CENTRE STREET, NEW YORK.



# **FORTUNE'S DETAIL ROSTER.**

**PRICE TWENTY-FIVE CENTS.**

Comprising two extensive ruled and printed blanks, to show at a glance who has and who has not been detailed for one month.

**Form No. 1** is a combination of the three rosters for the three different kinds of duty performed by details. It enables the Adjutant or Sergeant-Major to see, at a glance, the time any Officer or Non-Commissioned Officer has been off each class of duty, and he can make his detail without the liability of detailing an Officer or Non-Commissioned Officer for one kind of duty who is on another kind, without referring to any other roster. Paragraphs 562-572, Rev. Regulations, make this roster self-explanatory.

**Form No. 2** is explained by the following example:

Yesterday I received a "detail" detailing 50 privates from my command. Privates for duty in command, 500—per cent. 10. Company "A" had 55 men for duty—her proportion, then, was 5 five-tenths; I detailed 5, making up the decimal .5 in some other Company. To-day a "detail"—50 privates—is received. Privates for duty, same as yesterday—per cent. same. Company "A's" proportion, 5 five-tenths—difference (1°, less decimal .5) of yesterday, added to 5 five-tenths, makes 6—I detail from her 6 privates.

*Mailed free on receipt of the price.*

**NEW YORK:**

**JAMES W. FORTUNE, Publisher**

**No. 102 CENTRE STREET.**

---

---

**PRICE                      \$1 25                      CENTS.**

## **FORTUNE'S SERGEANT'S ROLL-BOOK**

**For the Company, Detail, and Squad.**

A neat pocket-book, bound in a water-proof flap cover, with pencil and calendars for 1862-3-4-5, and 6. Size, 4to cap, 6½ by 4 inches. Containing blanks with printed dates for thirty-one days, and one hundred names for six months.

*Mailed free on receipt of the price.*

**JAMES W. FORTUNE, Publisher,**

**NEW YORK.**



**PATTEN'S**  
**Approved Military Works.**

*Price Fifty Cents.*

**ARTILLERY DRILL,**  
CONTAINING THE  
**Manual of the Piece and Light  
Battery Manœuvres.**

**160 PAGES AND 72 ENGRAVINGS.**

*Office of Chief of Artillery, Army of Potomac,*  
WASHINGTON, March 5, 1862.

COLONEL :—It gives me great pleasure to state that your little book, entitled "PATTEN'S ARTILLERY DRILL," is, in my opinion, most admirably adapted to the use of non-commissioned officers and soldiers of the regular and volunteer batteries of field artillery. I should be glad to see it officially introduced into the service, particularly at the present time.

I am, Colonel, very respectfully,

Your obedient servant,

WM. F. BARRY, *Brig.-Gen., Ch. of Artillery.*

*Head-Quarters Military Defenses,*  
WASHINGTON, D. C., March 5, 1862.

I consider your work, called "PATTEN'S ARTILLERY DRILL," an excellent manual for the use of our artillery soldiers, on account of its portability, easy references, and full illustrations of every movement.

Yours, very truly,

A. DOUBLEDAY, *Brig.-Gen. of Volunteers.*

To COL. PATTEN.

**JAMES W. FORTUNE, Publisher, New York.**







PRICE TWO DOLLARS. 73  
FOURTH EDITION,

---

# PATTEN'S ARMY MANUAL,

CONTAINING

Instructions for Officers in the Preparation of  
Rolls, Returns, and Reports, and all Papers  
pertaining to the Duties of the Subsist-  
ence, Quartermaster, and Medical  
Departments, and the Accounts  
connected therewith.  
Forms of all Returns required of Regimental  
and Company Commanders,  
etc., etc., etc.

BY LIEUT.-COLONEL GEORGE PATTEN,

LATE OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY.

---

This work contains all the Forms used, and the Papers of the Quartermaster's and Subsistence Departments, as they are now required to be made out, with full information how and when they are to be prepared, and to whom they are to be sent—being, in this respect, in advance of the Army Regulations and all other Manuals of Instruction. It also contains Forms and Instructions for the preparation of all the ROLLS, RETURNS, and REPORTS required of Field and Company Officers. none of which are to be found in any other work.

It will be sent free by mail on receipt of price, Two Dollars, by the Publisher,

J. W. FORTUNE,

102 Centre Street, New York.











